UNIVERSITY OF CAPE TOWN

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

INTERPRETING TELEVISION: TELECONSCIOUSNESS AND THE DEVELOPMENT OF A CREATIVE CURRICULUM

A dissertation

presented in fulfilment of the

requirements for the Degree of

MASTER OF PHILOSOPHY

by

LEON LINZ

June 1990

46

The Causes of Avian Extinction and Rarity

by

Christopher James Lennard

Thesis submitted in the Faculty of Science (Department of Ornithology), University of Cape Town for the degree of Master of Science.

June 1997

Declaration:

I certify that this thesis results from my original investigation, except where acknowledged, and has not been submitted for a degree at any other university.

_____

Christopher J. Lennard

Table of contents

List of Figures

List of Tables

Acknowledgements:

I thank my parents for their continued support and encouragement in the production of this thesis; my supervisor, Prof. Phil Hockey, for his invaluable advice and direction when the going got tough; Allison Stattersfield at BirdLife International for raw data on threatened bird species, the Foundation for Research and Development for financial support; my friend, Jesus Christ, to whom I dedicate this thesis.

Then God said, "Let us make man in our image, in our likeness, and let them rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over all the livestock, over all the wild animals, and over all the creatures that move on the ground."

Genesis 1: 26 (New International Version of the Bible)

Abstract

Biological extinction rates have escalated by as much as 1000 times the background extinction rate over the last 1500 years, causing concern over the long-term survival of many species. Avian extinctions since 1600 have been well documented relative to other taxa, as have current levels of avian threat. This study analyses avian extinctions post-1600 and current threats in an attempt to develop some predictive capacity about which avian taxa should be awarded the highest conservation priority.

Analyses performed include examinations of the causes of avian extinction and threat, geographical location of extinct and threatened species, prehistoric and historical extinction rates, endemicity, migration, bird body size and phylogenetic diversity. An analysis dealing with historical and phylogenetic aspects of endangered and critically threatened species was performed, from which the world's most threatened species were identified. Factors which were the primary cause of historical extinctions are generally not the primary factors threatening today's extant avifauna. Whilst introduced predators and exploitation were primary causes of historical extinctions, habitat destruction poses the greatest threat to extant birds. Species predisposed to extinction typically have restricted ranges, and, compounded by habitat loss, these ranges are becoming more restricted. This has resulted in mainland-dwelling species becoming as prone to extinction as island-dwelling species have been historically. Introduced predators, however, do still threaten many of the world's most threatened species and their potential effects are highlighted in the phylogenetic analysis.

Already, many extinctions may be inevitable over the next 25 years as a result of habitat loss. The magnitude of extinctions across all animal and plant species in the next few decades could be comparable with that of previous mass extinctions unless immediate conservation action is taken. However, future conservation efforts will have to be prioritized, and this study is intended as a contribution towards such a prioritization exercise.

Chapter One: Introduction and methods.

Part 1 - Introduction

It is estimated that the 1.4 - 1.8*10^6 species of living organisms described to date may represent less than 15% of the world's biodiversity (Raven and Wilson 1992). This figure does not take into account the vast number of micro-organisms that are still to be described. The lack of knowledge of biodiversity is especially marked in the tropics, where most species occur and where the rates of extinction and form creation (*sensu* Balon 1993) appear to be the highest.

While there may be as many as 40*10^6 extant species of plants and animals, between 5 - 50*10^9 species are likely to have existed in the past, representing a 99.9% extinction rate (Raup 1992). Extinction is thus a natural and vital component of evolution. Diamond (1984a) breaks extinction into two extremes:

1. Dramatic and sudden extinction due to some clearly identifiable event, impinging on many species as a wave of extinctions.
2. "Normal" extinctions that affect populations isolated on islands or disjunct patches of habitat. This eliminates populations one by one rather than as a wave of extinctions.

Extinction can be either phyletic or terminal (Ehrlich and Ehrlich 1981, Soulé 1983). Phyletic extinction occurs when, through the process of evolution and adaptive radiation, a parental species is replaced by one or more derivative species. Terminal extinction occurs when there is no derivative species following the extinction of a unique species. These species become extinct either because they do not evolve rapidly enough to meet changing circumstances or because niches disappear and no capacity for rapid evolution could save them (Smith 1989).

Ehrlich *et al.* (1977) estimated the average species' lifespan of vertebrates at between

200 000 and 2 000 000 years, giving a background extinction rate of 0.2 to 2 species per million species per year. This rate has apparently increased by 1000 to 10 000 fold due to anthropogenic impacts (Wilson and Peter 1988), although some authors dispute this: (Budiansky 1994, Simon 1995, Simon and Wildavsky 1993). Various estimates of global extinction rates project annual losses of between 1000 and 30 000 species by the end of this century (Reid and Miller 1989, Ehrlich and Wilson 1991, Wilson 1992).

The next mass extinction?

There have been at least five mass extinctions in the past 440 million years: at the close of the Ordovician (438 mya), Devonian (360 mya), Permian (248 mya), Triassic (213 mya) and Cretaceous (65 mya) periods, when the number of families of some marine organisms declined by 12, 14, 52, 12 and 11% respectively (Wilson 1989). Wilson (*op. cit.*) states that although 90% of past species extinctions occurred at times other than these five, mass extinctions have a profound biological significance through their impact on selection regimes. Simberloff (1984, 1986a) questions if we are not at the beginning of the next mass extinction, the causes of this mass extinction being anthropogenic. Diamond (1989) and Pimm (1995) not only suggest that this is occurring, but also that it has been under way for thousands of years.

Wilson (1989) estimated that as many as 4 000 to 6 000 species per year may be being lost from tropical rain forests alone and that man-induced extinction rates may reduce current biodiversity to its lowest level since the end of the Mesozoic era, 65 million years ago. These rates of extinction are far higher than those suggested in the IUCN Red List (Groombridge 1993). Over the last decade, upwards of 20 000 species have been listed as being at risk by one or more prominent conservation organisations (McNeely *et al.* 1990, WRI 1990, Smith *et al.* 1993a).

Smith *et al.* (1993a,b) calculated that about 486 animal species have become extinct since 1600 AD. In the latest IUCN Red list of Threatened Animals (Groombridge 1993), 615 species are reported to have become extinct since 1600. This figure includes 83 mammals, 114 birds, 20 reptiles, four amphibians, 36 fishes and 358 invertebrates. Humphries and

Fisher (1994) have suggested that there was a sharp increase in the rate of animal extinctions between 1850 and 1950, which coincided with the rise of European colonial expansion and the use of natural resources to fuel the industrial revolution (Smith *et al.* 1993b); a direct correlation exists between the total amount of energy consumed by mankind and animal extinction rates (Ehrlich 1994). Ehrlich (*op.cit*) further contends that total energy consumption could be used as an index of global extinction rates, and predicts that these rates could be far higher than present estimates suggest: 30 years to the extinction of 50% of all species of mammals and birds.

Other estimates of the rate of biotic extinction over the next 50-100 years range from 15-20% of present biodiversity (Mace 1994) to 25% (Nicholson 1991) and 50% (Smith *et al.* 1993b). These rates approach that required to generate a genus-level extinction at a scale equivalent to and perhaps surpassing some of the largest mass extinctions in history (Ehrlich 1986). Although today's extinction patterns conform mainly to greatly intensified versions of background extinction rates, losses are concentrated in narrowly endemic species and subspecies (Jablonski 1994), which inhabit primarily tropical regions (Simberloff 1986a).

The loss of species is not the only consequence of extinctions. Theoretical and empirical data now exist which show that ecosystems in the tropics not only contain more species but also a richer network of interactions between species, and that they are more dynamically fragile than higher-latitude systems (reviewed by May 1981; Bruton 1989, 1990). These systems are characterised by high biotic saturation and strong interspecific interactions such as symbioses, commensalism, parasitism, hyperparasitism and communal broodcare (Ribbink *et al.* 1983, Ribbink 1994). Naeem *et al.* (1994) demonstrated that (under controlled, experimental conditions) the loss of biodiversity could alter or impair the services that ecosystems provided (Ehrlich and Wilson 1991). The stable productivity of ecosystems is dependent upon the preservation of biodiversity in these systems (Tilman and Downing 1994). An extinction of one species in a complex system could lead to an "extinction cascade" which in turn could threaten much of the biodiversity within the system (Diamond 1989, Williamson 1989).

Extinctions therefore result in the loss of both species and life-supporting interactions between species, with a resultant cascading effect on taxa that were not originally impacted. The mature successional state of tropical systems, which typically includes a high proportion of specialised, precocial species, tends to be reversed by man's perturbations, with the result that more generalised, altricial species survive (Bruton 1989). Furthermore, the precocial species that have been lost will not be replaced by other specialist species because their respective specialisations are too great to allow interchangeability (Hsu 1982). Instead, the niches of extirpated species may be adopted by altricial species that are generalists, and the complex interactions between specialist species may disappear.

Birds and extinction

A primary aim of conservation is to reduce the rate at which the world's biological diversity is being lost. *Inter alia* this requires developing predictions about which taxa are most at risk and why. Various approaches have been used, including measures of genetic variability and Minimum Viable Population analysis. An alternative approach is to analyse the reasons why species have become extinct or are facing imminent extinction.

Avian extinctions since 1600 are well documented by comparison with other taxonomic groups (Jenkins 1992) and the threats posed to extant species are well catalogued in the Red Data Books (e.g. Collar and Andrews 1988, Collar *et al.* 1994). Thus, birds lend themselves well to this type of analysis.

This thesis examines avian extinctions since 1600 and the types of threat currently faced by bird species. Specifically, the study addresses the following questions:

1. Which bird species have become extinct since 1600?
2. What were the causes of these extinctions, and did these change over time? What are the current causes of threat to avifauna?
3. How has the rate of species extinction changed over time?
4. Where did species become extinct and are there extinction "hotspots"? How do these compare with threat "hotspots"?

5. What factors or combination of factors predispose birds to extinction; e.g. range size and endemicity, body size, flight capabilities, specific threats or combinations thereof?
6. How do the attributes of species currently threatened with extinction compare to those that have already become extinct?
7. Based on the above, which avian species are potentially at greatest risk of global extinction?

Thesis structure

The thesis is divided into four chapters:

Chapter 1: The introduction and methods. Included here are a literature review, data collection procedure, and data analysis techniques.

Chapter 2: Avifaunal extinctions. The chapter is divided into a results section and a discussion section. The chronology, causes, geography and taxonomy of extinct birds are dealt with as well as migration, endemicity and body size. The discussion section considers in addition these, prehistoric extinctions.

Chapter 3: Current threats to avifauna. The chapter is divided into a results and discussion section which consider cause, geography, taxonomy, endemicity, body size and habitat of currently threatened species.

Chapter 4: This chapter draws together prehistoric and historical extinction, and current threat in terms of cause, geography and taxonomy in order to attempt to answer question seven above. A phylogenetic analysis is presented as one means of prioritising threatened species within threat categories.

Part 2 - Methods

Extinction literature

The primary sources of extinction information were six books and a list supplied via the Internet by the Worldwide Fund for Nature (Table 1).

Table 1. Sources used in gathering extinction data.

Author (s)	*Date*	*Title*	*Number of extinct species listed*
1. Clements, F. J.	1991	Birds of the World: A Check List	60
2. Collar, N.J., Crosby, M.J. and Stattersfield, A.J.	1994	Birds to Watch 2. A Checklist of Threatened Birds	14
3. Day, D.	1989	The Encyclopaedia of Vanished Species	92
4. Fuller, E.	1987	Extinct Birds	86
5. Greenway, J.C.	1967	Extinct and Vanishing Birds of the World	51
6. Mountfort, G.	1988	Rare Birds of the World	75
7. W.W.F.	1994	No Title	97

Although Fuller (1987) and Day (1989) are semi-popular publications, these were used in compiling the database of extinct species because they detailed causes of extinction more often than other sources and also listed species not listed in other sources. Fuller (1987) is reviewed by Brooke (1988).

Comparison of data from these sources revealed the following:

1. The number of sources listing any one extinction varies greatly; 32 extinctions were listed by only one of the sources. Only two extinctions were listed by all seven sources. However, Collar *et al.* (1994) listed only 14 of the most recent extinctions and, excluding this publication, 24 species are listed by all six sources.
2. Each source, except Greenway (1967) and Collar *et al.* (1994), list species that are unique to it (Table 2). These species form 23% of the dataset.

3. There was much discrepancy in allocating species and subspecies amongst the sources; this problem is discussed below. (Zink and McKitrick (1995) highlight current concepts of species and the implications of these to ornithology).

Table 2. The number of extinct avifauna unique to respective authors.

Author	*Non-passerines*	*Passerines*	*Total*
1. Clements (1991)	1	3	4
2. Day (1989)	16	1	17
3. Fuller (1988)	0	1	1
4. Mountfort (1967)	2	1	3
5.W.W.F. (1994)	5	2	7
Total	24	8	32

Threat literature

Collar *et al.* (1994) list 1111 avian species that are considered globally threatened. These are divided into four categories: extinct in the wild, critically endangered, endangered and vulnerable: there are 4, 168, 235 and 704 species in each respective category. According to the new IUCN criteria (Collar *et al.* 1994), critically endangered species stand a 50% chance of extinction in five years, endangered species a 20% chance of extinction in 20 years and vulnerable species a 10% chance of extinction in 100 years. It is thus more difficult to allocate a species to endangered or critical status as compared with vulnerable (Fig. 1).

A species listed as extinct in the wild is known to survive only in captivity or as a naturalised population (or populations) well outside the historical range. The four species falling in this category are the Alagoas Curassow *Mitu mitu*, the Guam Rail *Gallirallus owstoni*, the Socorro Dove *Zenaida graysoni* and the Kakapo *Strigops habroptilus*. I have grouped "extinct in the wild" and "critical" together to make analysis easier, thus listing 172 species as critically threatened. Alison Stattersfield (BirdLife International) supplied a dataset that was used in the threat analyses.

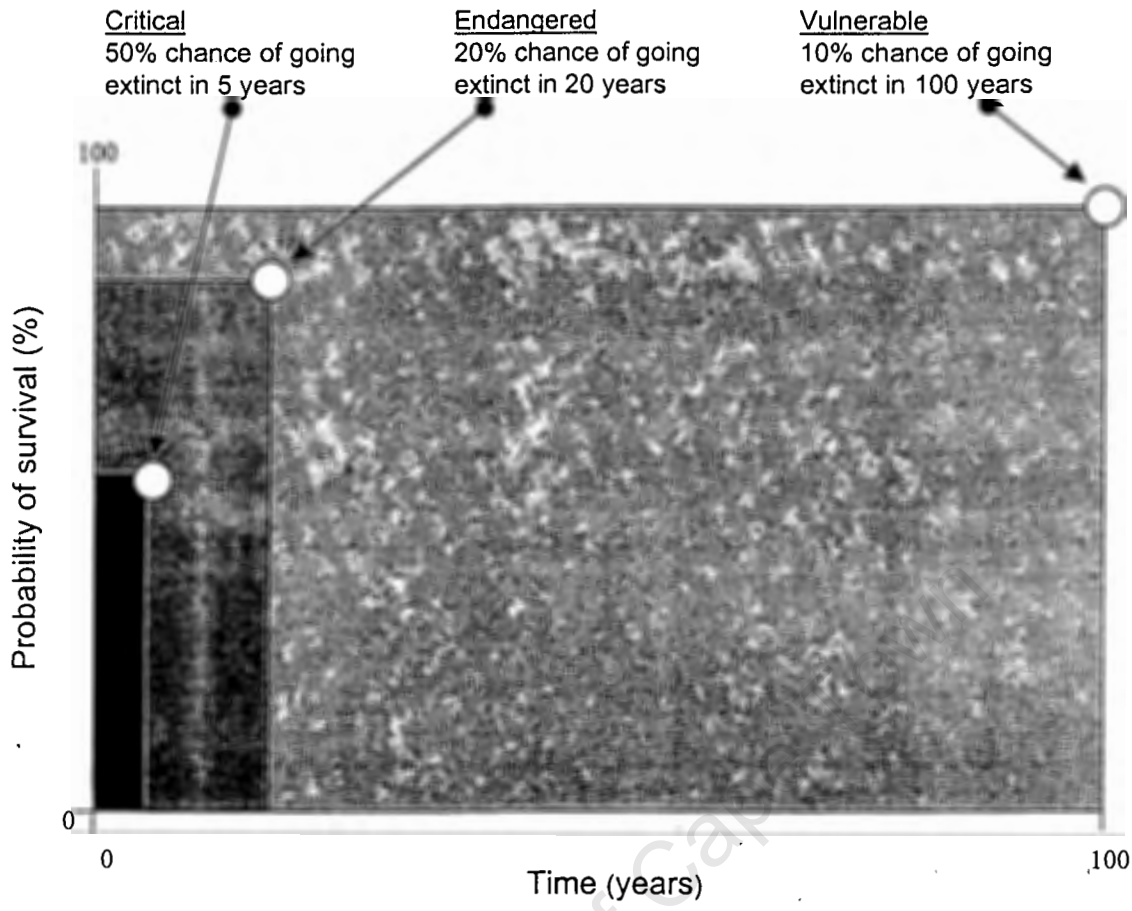


Fig. 1. Extinction probabilities and the IUCN threat categories. This representation indicates the relative difficulty (represented by the relatively small, dark rectangles enclosed by the threshold lines) of qualifying as endangered and, especially, critical, compared with vulnerable (light, pale rectangle). (From Collar *et al.* 1994).

Data analysis

i. Extinction data

Data for extinct species were extracted from the seven sources and compiled into one dataset. The compilation of this dataset took into account repetition of species by different authors and synonyms in nomenclature. There were difficulties encountered in allocating taxa to species as distinct from subspecies.

Distinguishing between species and subspecies

Initially the database contained 214 species and subspecies that the various sources listed as extinct. Three authors list subspecies: Day (1989) - 53, Greenway (1967) - 44 and Fuller (1987) - 41. Fuller also lists 29 races, resulting in his listing 70 taxa below the species level. Often, what one author called a species, another called a subspecies or race. For instance, Fuller (1987) considered the New Zealand Little Bittern *Ixobrychus minutus novaezelandiae* distinct only at the subspecies level whereas Mountfort (1988) and WWF. accorded it specific status *Ixobrychus novaezelandiae*; Greenway (1967) treated the New Zealand Quail as a subspecies *Coturnix novaezelandiae novaezelandiae* whereas Day (1989), Mountfort (1988), Fuller (1987) and the WWF. treated it specifically as *Coturnix novaezelandiae*. In these and other such cases, the following criteria were applied to determine if a taxon was included in the species list:

1. If there was a trinomial scientific name it was treated as a subspecies and not included.
2. If one source named a bird a subspecies and more than one source called the same bird a species, the classification supported by the most sources was used.
3. In the case where an equal number of sources were in disagreement, the most recent reference was used.

All scientific names are found in the appendices if not mentioned in the text.

Data compilation

All extinction data were compiled into two datasets. These datasets held information as follows:

- A dataset with information on species extinctions (Appendix 1).
- A dataset with information on subspecies extinctions (Appendix 2).

These datasets hold information on species/subspecies classification and nomenclature, bird body mass, extinction location, most recognised extinction date, extinction causes and a reference section. Sub-specific data are presented for completeness but are not included in analyses nor are body masses given for these.

Chronology of extinction

The time period from 1600 to present was divided into eight 50-year time intervals; 1600-1649, 1650-1699 etc. The year of each extinction was placed into the appropriate 50-year interval together with information concerning the causes of extinction. This enabled an analysis of the rate of extinction with time and an examination of the most important causes of extinction during a specific time period. Patterns of change in causes of extinction over time were derived from this database. Data were analysed for (1) species occurring on both islands and the mainland regions, (2) island species only and (3) mainland species only.

Causes of extinction

Temple (1978, 1986) and Simberloff (1986b) make a distinction between two types of cause of extinction, the "proximate" cause of extinction and the "ultimate" cause of extinction. Proximate causes are those which caused the death of the last remaining individuals of the species. This contrasts with the ultimate cause of extinction, which refers to events that may have occurred earlier, and led to a situation in which there would be a small, terminal population committed to extinction. In this analysis both proximate and ultimate causes are considered.

Diamond (1984b, 1989) classified known causes of extinction into four categories which he termed "the evil quartet". These were:

1. Overkill;
2. Habitat destruction and fragmentation;
3. Impact of introduced species; and
4. Chains of extinction or "extinction cascades".

I have used the first three of Diamond's categories and adapted their nomenclature in order to use them in conjunction with the threat causes listed in Collar *et al.* (1994). As a result I identified five general causes of recent avian extinctions. These were:

1. Exploitation (Ex.): Includes the hunting of birds and eggs for food; taking of birds, feathers, and eggs for trade or collection; persecution for various reasons.
2. Habitat destruction (H.D.): Includes fire, destruction of indigenous forest for logging/slash-and-burn agriculture, removal of forests for large scale crop and livestock farming, destruction of forest to make way for urban development.
3. Introduced predators (I.P.): Includes cats, rats, dogs, and a snake species. Man introduced these either accidentally or deliberately.
4. Other (O): Seven species fell into this category, the causes being:
   a. competition with man for marine invertebrates;
   b. disease introduced by alien birds; and
   c. competition with introduced alien birds for a common resource.
5. Unknown (?): The definite reasons for many extinctions are unknown, especially those occurring from 1600-1750. In here may be included the fourth of Diamond's "evil quartet".

Frequently, a combination of the above factors has caused extinctions, e.g. in the case of the Passenger Pigeon *Ectopistes migratorius* it was the combined effects of the loss of its natural habitat and severe hunting that brought this species to extinction (Bucher 1992). These were perhaps ultimate and proximate causes respectively. When there was a combination of causes it was listed as e.g. (HD/Ex.), (HD/IP) or (Ex/IP).

Geography of extinction

To investigate the geography of extinctions, islands and mainland (continental) regions were compared to determine which have experienced the most extinctions. An oceanic perspective of island extinctions was obtained by dividing the oceans of the world into the northern and southern Pacific, northern and southern Atlantic and the southern Indian Ocean (north and south being divided at the Equator). The positions and sizes of islands in these regions were assessed to determine location and size of the most affected regions and islands. A map showing global extinction density was produced. Extinctions of passerine and non-passerine species on the islands in the various regions were analysed to determine whether the different orders experienced different levels of extinction in the different regions.

Phylogeny of extinction

Avian orders and families were examined to determine if certain of these were more extinction prone than others. Orders that experienced the most extinctions were examined in greater detail. At the family level, families that experienced the most extinctions were listed and comparisons were drawn with families that have a large percentage of threatened species. Statistical analyses were performed to assess whether family diversity was linked in any way to extinction probabilities.

Body size

Gaston and Blackburn (1995) state that it seems likely that body size may be used as a pointer to recognise which species are most at risk of extinction. Body sizes of species were used, where data were available, to determine if this was true for extinct species. As no sources listed data as to bird body size, Dunning (1993) was used to extract data on bird body mass. Dunning (*op. cit.*) listed very few extinct birds and in general, body masses of extinct species had to be inferred. This was done by examining species of the same genus and comparing body sizes with data contained in Fuller (1987) on bird length. If no comparison with Fuller (1987) could be made, the body sizes of all species listed in the affected genus was averaged. In doing this all but 14 extinct species were assigned a body mass. This is a very conservative methodology. However, it was selected as being one which would tend to mask rather than exaggerate body-size effects. A chronological analysis was performed to determine if, in certain time periods, birds of particular sizes were more prone to extinction than at other times. An analysis to examine whether a relationship existed between bird body size and island size was also carried out.

ii. Threat data

Analysis of threatened taxa are based upon the data provided by Alison Stattersfield (BirdLife International) and information contained in Collar *et al.* (1994).

Data compilation

Threatened species listed by Collar *et al.* (1994) were separated into their threat categories (critically threatened [including the four "extinct in the wild" species], endangered and vulnerable). Details of extant avian orders, families and species of the world were extracted from Clements (1991) and Monroe and Sibley (1993). Clements (1991), although a popular birdwatchers' checklist, was used for the following reasons: Dunning (1993) used it as the taxonomic basis for his analysis and there was greater agreement as to taxon placement between Clements (1991) and Collar *et al.* (1994), particularly at the order and family level. Similarly, the sources from which the extinction data were obtained generally followed the older taxonomic treatment. Using both sources aided in analyses of threat to families and where there are differences, these are noted. There are taxonomic differences between Monroe and Sibley (1993) and Clements (1991) and these are summarised in Table 3.

Monroe and Sibley (1993) (hereafter M&S) list 23 orders containing 9702 species whereas Clements (1991) lists 31 orders containing 9455 species. M&S is based on Sibley and Ahlquist (1990) and Sibley and Monroe (1990), a classification derived from DNA-DNA hybridization. However, this classification is criticised by many authors; Sibley and Ahlquist (1990) by Raikow (1991), Krajewski (1991), O'Hara (1991) and Peterson (1992), and Sibley and Monroe (1990) by Siegel-Causey (1992). Siegel-Causey (1992) notes that Sibley and Monroe (1990) base their results on about 12% of avian species, inferring relationships for the other 88% in their classification, which he claims would be better termed an "arrangement". Clements (1991) bases his specific treatment on Sibley and Monroe (1990) but uses Gill (1990) for higher taxonomy, which is more conservative. Clements (1991) and M&S were used jointly in this threat analysis. Where discrepancies arose, this is noted and numbers of species in affected families compensated for.

Table 3. Summary of taxonomic nomenclature differences between Monroe and Sibley (1993) and Clements (1991)

Clements (1991)	Monroe and Sibley (1993)	Orders listed by Clements which Monroe and Sibley subsume as families in their classification	Orders listed by Monroe and Sibley which Clements subsumed as families in his classification
Orders (31)	Orders (23)		
Tinamiformes	Tinamiformes		
Struthiorniformes	Struithioniformes	Struthioniformes	
Rheiformes		Rheidae	
Casuariiformes		Casuariidae	
Dinornithiformes		Dinornithiformes as Apterygidae	
Ciconiiformes	Ciconiiformes	Ciconiiformes	
		Under sub-order Charadrii	
Charadriiformes		Charadriidae	
Pteroclidiformes		Pteroclidae	
		Under sub-order Ciconii	
Spheniscifformes		Spheniscidae	
Podicipediformes		Podicipedidae	
Procellariiformes		Procellariidae	
Pelecaniformes		Pelecanidae	
Phoenicopteriformes		Phoenicopteridae	
Falconiformes		Falconidae	
Gaviiformes		Gaviidae	
Anseriformes	Anseriformes		
Galliformes	Galliformes		
Gruiformes	Gruiformes		
Columbiformes	Columbiformes		
Psittaciformes	Psittaciformes		
Coliiformes	Coliiformes		
Musophagiformes	Musophagiformes		
Cuculiformes	Cuculiformes		
Strigiformes	Strigiformes	Strigiformes	
Caprimulgiformes		Caprimulgidae	
Apodiformes	Apodiformes		
Trochiliformes	Trochiliformes		
Trogoniformes	Trogoniformes		
Coraciiformes	Coraciiformes		
Piciformes	Piciformes		
	Turniciformes		Turnicidae under Gruiformes
	Craciformes		Cracidae under Galliformes
	Bucerotiformes		Bucerotidae under Coraciifromes
	Upupiformes		Upupidae under Coraciiformes
	Galbuliformes		Galbulidae under Piciformes
Passeriformes	Passeriformes		

Using these data, comparisons were drawn between orders and families that contained threatened species and those that did not. A comparison was also made between those orders and families that have experienced extinction of species and those that have not. In these comparisons, it was taken into account whether species were to be found on the mainland only, on islands only, or on both.

Causes of threat

Collar *et al.* (1994) list ten causes of threat to birds. These are:

0. Unknown;
1. Loss or alteration of habitat;
2. Hunting, persecution (including accidental trapping), egg collecting (subsistence);
3. Disturbance (by humans, stock);
4. Fisheries;
5. Pollution, pesticides, poisoning (accidental);
6. Introduced species (predators, competitors, herbivores, diseases);
7. Trade, egg collecting (commercial);
8. Natural causes (exacerbated by other influences); and
9. Small range or population.

I have summarised these into the same five categories as used for extinctions in order to make comparisons between the historical causes of extinction and current causes of threat: causes 1 and 3 above were included in habitat alteration, 2 and 7 were included in exploitation, 4 and 5 were included in "other" and 8 and 9 are discussed below. The threat from introduced vertebrates differs from the definition of "introduced predators" as used for extinctions in that it does not take into account only the effect of predators. For extinctions, where introduced vertebrates were not predators, they were listed as "other" in order to isolate the specific influence of predators on avian extinction.

In a number of cases, especially in the case of critical and endangered species, a main threat (habitat destruction, introduced predators or exploitation) appeared together with natural causes (exacerbated by other causes) and/or small ranges or populations (causes 8 and 9 above). In cases where natural causes and/or small range or populations

accompanied the main causes; the main causes were considered as being the most important threats and are used in the analysis. Where natural causes and/or small range or populations were the only threat, the affected species were placed in the "other" category.

The number of species in each category of threat (critical, endangered and vulnerable) impacted by the above five threat types were arranged to show the following:

- the number of threatened species per family
- the number of species that fell into each of the three threat categories
- the number of species threatened by a particular threat type or combination of threats.

Using the above data, the most important threats were identified for (1) all threatened species, (2) only endangered species, and (3) only critically endangered species.

Geography of threat

A comparison between the number of threatened species found on islands, mainland areas and those inhabiting both was made. Threats were analysed to give an overview of which threats are most prevalent in the three respective range types.

The geographical distributions of endangered and critically endangered species were investigated in more detail. In these analyses the format used by Collar *et al.* (1994) was adopted in defining geographical regions. These regions were North America, Central America, South America, Africa, "Russia", Asia and Australasia.

Countries and islands in these regions supporting endangered or critically threatened birds were identified and geographical comparisons were made between species with island and mainland ranges that fell within these two threat categories. Global threat density maps for the two categories were produced. Threat to endangered and critically threatened locally endemic species was also examined because it is over these species that much concern is expressed (e.g. Balmford and Long 1994, Pimm and Askins 1995).

Taxonomy of threatened species

Family sizes were examined to test whether there is any relationship between family size and the number of threatened species. Families with 20% of their species under threat were listed. Families with only critical and/or endangered species were also examined.

Habitats of threatened birds

More taxa are under threat in forests than in other habitats (Simberloff 1984, Diamond 1989, Balmford and Long 1994, Pimm and Askins 1995, Pimm *et al.* 1995, Brooks and Balmford 1996). Consequently, special attention was paid to the number of threatened species that live exclusively or partially in forests. This was done for all threat categories together to produce an overall picture, and subsequently for each category on its own to assess what proportions of forest-dwelling species are vulnerable, endangered and critical.

Body size, endemicity, threat and extinction on ten selected islands

Ten islands of various sizes accounting for a range of endemic avifauna were selected to test whether a relationship existed between body size, endemicity, threat and extinction. Analyses were done for all endemic species and then only critical and endangered endemic avifauna. Correlations between the causes of extinction and current threat on these islands were made to determine if relationships between these existed. A coarser scale analysis was also performed to determine the distribution of extinct, extant and critical and endangered endemic avifauna on the ten islands.

iii. Prehistoric extinctions, historical extinctions and current threat

A comparison was drawn between selected families that had experienced prehistoric extinctions (before 1600), historical extinctions (1600 to present) and which currently contain threatened species to test whether or not some families are more prone to extinction than others. The data were also used to assess whether certain families had passed through an "extinction filter" (*sensu* Balmford 1996).

iv. Phylogenetic analysis

Collar *et al.* (1984) use a classification approach that treats all species as equal. They apply the same criteria on which they base their results in the same way equally to all species. They do not attempt to consider species or family history or phylogeny in their approach and are thus not able to include any element of phylogenetic uniqueness in their threat status assessment.

The last section of this thesis attempts to include an element of "evolutionary uniqueness" using the species listed by Collar *et al.* (1994). This analysis considers (1) the historical predisposition of a family to extinction, (2) the proportion of the family under threat and (3) the phylogenetic uniqueness of the family.

Chapter Two: The extinction of avifauna since 1600.

Part 1 - Results

Since 1600, a minimum of 214 species and subspecies of birds have become extinct. Applying the criteria for species status listed in the methods section, this list is reduced to 138 avian species. Appendix 1 lists these species by order and family. This forms 1.44% of the total number of avian species known to have existed from that time. Of these extinctions, 124 were island taxa, 12 species had exclusively mainland distributions and two extinctions were of species that had ranges spanning both islands and mainland. Appendix 2 lists the remaining 76 cases classified at the level of subspecies or race.

Chronology of extinction

From 1600 there was an escalating extinction rate until 1950 (Table 4). Since 1950 there has been a marked drop in extinction rate: 12 species having become extinct, this being the lowest extinction rate in the last 200 years. This rate is the same as in each of the two 50-year intervals between 1649 and 1749. The lowest number of extinctions occurred in the first 50-year period from 1600 - 1650 (n=6). The period with the highest rate of extinction was 1900 - 1949 when 33 species became extinct. In the preceding 50 years, 26 extinctions occurred, this being the next highest rate. Forty percent of the bird extinctions since 1600 have occurred in the 20th Century.

Chronology of mainland extinctions

Twelve species have become extinct in mainland regions since 1600 (Table 5). The first documented mainland extinction was in 1800 when the Painted Vulture *Sarcorhamphus sacra* became extinct in Florida, USA (Day 1989). The most rapid mainland extinction rate occurred between 1900 and 1949 when five species (42% of mainland extinctions) became extinct. The

next 46 years saw the next highest rate having three mainland extinctions (24%). Sixty-seven percent of all mainland extinctions have occurred during the 20th Century.

Chronology of island extinctions

One hundred and twenty four species have become extinct on islands since 1600 (Table 6). It is difficult to pinpoint the first extinction accurately; the only species for which there is a relatively precise date of extinction in the years 1600 - 1649 is the Greater Broad-billed Moa *Euryapteryx gravis* (1640). The remaining five species' extinction dates are not known precisely. The insular avian extinction rate peaked in the period 1900 - 1949, with 28 extinctions. The preceding half-century with 24 extinctions followed this. This 100-year year period accounted for 42% of insular extinctions. Since 1950 there has been a sharp reduction in island extinctions, only eight species having become extinct. One recent extinction date is unknown: that of Sharpe's Rail from Indonesia.

Table 4. A chronological analysis of the causes of avian extinctions since 1600.

For habitat type:

I	Island
M	Mainland
B	Both

For reasons

Ex	Exploitation of birds and/or eggs for food, trade or feathers and includes persecution.
H.D.	Habitat destruction
I.V.	Introduced predators (rats, cats, dogs, weasels)
O	Other (see text)

Date interval	Number of extinctions	Range type			Reasons								Percent of total	Totals
		I	M	B	Ex	H.D.	I.V.	HD and IV	HD and Ex	Ex and IV	Unknown	Other		
1600-1649	6	6							1		5		4.3	6
1650-1699	12	12			3				2		7		8.7	12
1700-1749	12	12			4		1				7		8.7	12
1750-1799	16	16			4	1	4		2		5		11.6	16
1800-1849	20	17	2	1	2	2	4	2	2		8		14.5	20
1850-1899	26	25	2		3	1	5	1	2	2	8	4	18.8	26
1900-1949	33	27	5		4	6	5	6	2		8	2	23.9	33
1949-1995	12	8	3	1		4	5		1		1	1	8.7	12
Dates unknown	1	1									1		0.7	1
Causes for both	2				1				1				1.4	2
Totals	138	124	12	2	20	14	24	9	12	2	50	7	100	138
Percentages	100	90	9	1	14	10	17	7	9	1	36	5		100

Table 5. A chronological analysis of mainland avian extinctions in species since 1600.

Date interval	Ex	H.D.	Ex and H.D.	H.D. and I.V.	Unknown	Percentages	Totals
1800-1849		1			1	17	2
1850-1899					2	17	2
1900-1949	1	1	1	1	1	42	5
1950-1995		3				25	3
Totals	1	5	1	1	4		12
Percentages	6	28	6	6	22	100	67

Table 6. A chronological analysis of the causes of avian extinctions on islands since 1600.

Date interval	Number of extinctions	Range types			Reasons									
		I	M	B	Ex	H.D.	I.V.	HD and IV	HD and Ex	Ex and IV	Unknown	Other	Percent of total	Totals
1600-1649	6	6							1		5		5	6
1650-1699	12	12			3				2		7		10	12
1700-1749	12	12			4		1				7		10	12
1750-1799	16	16			4	1	4		2		5		13	16
1800-1849	20	17	2	1	1	1	4	2	2		7		14	17
1850-1899	27	25	2		3	1	5	1	2	2	6	4	19	24
1900-1949	32	27	5		3	5	5	5	1		7	2	23	28
1949-1995	12	8	3	1		1	5				1	1	6	8
Unknown cause	1	1									1		0	1
Cause for "both"	2				1				1					
Totals	138	124	12	2	18	9	24	8	10	2	46	7	100	124
Percentages	99	89	9	1	15	7	19	6	8	2	37	6	100	89

Causes of extinction

Introduced predators, exploitation, habitat destruction and combinations thereof have accounted for 58% of avian extinctions since 1600 (Table 4). The causes of 50 (36%) extinctions are unknown. These are likely, however, to include the above factors which were either not observed or recorded by explorers and biologists of the day. Single factors as sole causes of extinction have been identified for 58 species and 23 species were affected by a combination of factors. During the 20th Century, 24 extinctions were caused by one factor only (habitat destruction and introduced predators alone accounted for 10 each) and nine extinctions were a result of a combination of factors. The causes of nine 20th Century extinctions are unknown. In the last 46 years, eight extinctions were caused by one factor only and three by combinations of factors (one cause is unknown).

Introduced predators such as cats, dogs, a snake species, weasels and especially rats have been the sole cause of the extinction of 24 species, and in combination with habitat destruction and exploitation, introduced predators have accounted for the loss of a further 11 species. Exploitation of birds for food and/or feathers has caused 20 extinctions and in combination with the other factors, a further 14 species have been affected. Habitat destruction has resulted in 14 extinctions; and, in conjunction with the other two factors has contributed to a further 21 extinctions.

Seven species have become extinct for reasons that could not be incorporated into the main three categories. The extinction of the Canarian Black Oystercatcher *Haematopus meadewaldoi* was caused by competition with man for marine invertebrates (Hockey 1987). In the Hawaiian islands, introduced birds brought with them avian malaria, and this, together with competition with indigenous birds for common resources caused the extinction of six Drepanididae species (Warner 1968).

Two single causes and two combinations of causes have been responsible for the 12 mainland extinctions (Table 5). Habitat destruction has accounted for five extinctions alone, and in combination with other causes, a further two extinctions. Of the species with known extinction

causes, habitat destruction features in all mainland extinctions except one, the Carolina Parakeet *Conuropsis carolinensis* that became extinct through exploitation (hunting). Introduced predators have not been the sole cause of a single extinction on the mainland and feature in only one extinction.

The causes of insular extinctions (Table 6) are broadly the same as those for all extinctions. Insular extinctions, by virtue of their prevalence, shape the trend of all extinctions.

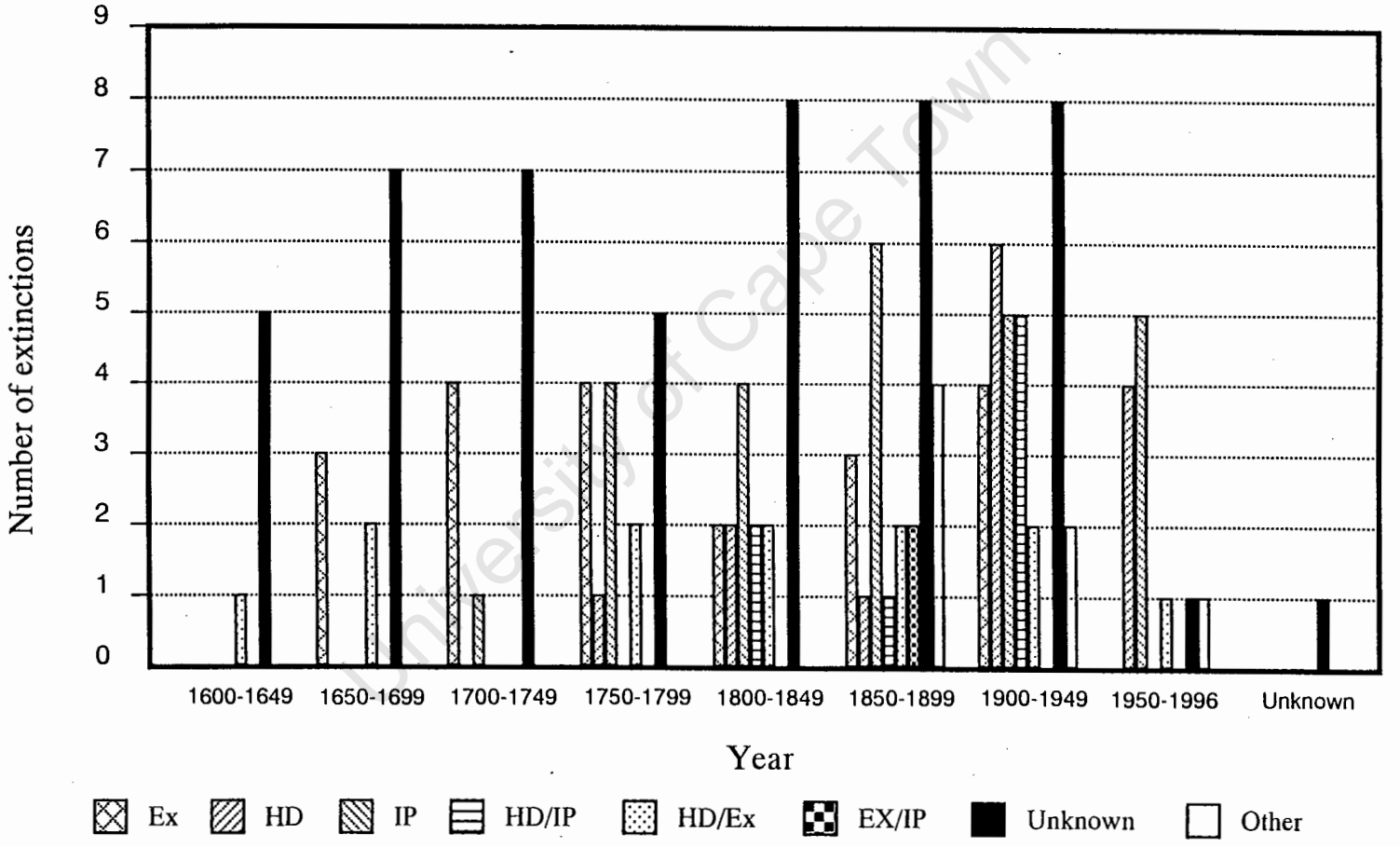
Cause and chronology

The cause and chronology of avian extinction are summarised in Fig. 2. Unknown causes dominate all the 50-year intervals except 1950-1995. During the period 1600-1800, exploitation was the most frequently identified cause of extinction. Introduced predators were first responsible for an extinction in 1700 and by 1799 had become, along with exploitation, the primary known cause of extinction. Introduced predators have remained the commonest cause of extinction until the present except in the time period 1900-1949 when habitat loss was equally serious. Only in the period 1900-1950 do recorded combinations of factors feature strongly together with single causes. In this period habitat destruction and introduced predators accounted for 16 extinctions, five being as a result of a combination of these, five being as a result of introduced predators alone and six as a result of habitat destruction alone. However, it is likely that combinations of causes also featured in extinctions prior to this but were not recognised as such.

Until 1900, there was a gradual increase in the diversity of causes that played a role in extinctions. Between 1850 and 1899 all eight of the causes and many combinations played a role. Between 1950 and 1996 five causes have been identified as causing extinction, introduced predators and habitat destruction featuring most prominently.

For mainland extinctions the period 1900-1949 had the highest number of extinctions as well as the greatest variety of causes (5). Since 1950 three mainland species have become extinct, all as a result of habitat destruction.

Fig. 2. The chronology and causes of avian extinctions since 1600



Geography of extinction

The 138 post-1600 global bird extinctions have occurred on 49 islands and in 11 mainland regions (Table 7). The Great Auk *Alca impennis* can not be attributed one island or mainland provenance as its range spanned most of the north Atlantic: this species was therefore excluded from geographic analyses. The Ivory-billed Woodpecker *Campephilus principalus*, the other species whose range included mainland and island habitat, occurred in Cuba and the USA. Both of these countries have experienced other extinctions and the species was included in the geographical analysis.

Of the 62 sites that have experienced extinctions, 41 experienced one extinction only. Thus 66% of sites experienced only 30% of the extinctions. Twenty-one sites (34%), all islands except Colombia, have experienced two or more extinctions and account for 90 extinctions (70%). Three or more extinctions were experienced at ten sites, all islands. These islands make up 16% of the total number of sites but account for 75 (54%) extinctions. Four islands experienced ten or more extinctions, affecting 49 species i.e. 6% of sites have experienced 36% of all extinctions.

Island location

New Zealand has experienced the most extinctions (16), ten of these being moa extinctions. Hawaii has suffered 12 extinctions, followed by the Mascarenes (Mauritius, Rodrigues and Réunion) with 11, 10 and nine extinctions respectively. (The only mainland country to have experienced more than one avian extinction is Colombia, with two.)

Regions that have experienced island extinctions are the northern and southern Pacific and Atlantic Oceans, and the southern Indian Ocean (Table 8). The southern Pacific region has seen the most extinctions, 43 species having been lost from 18 islands. Sixteen of these were on New Zealand. This is followed by islands in the southern Indian Ocean (39 extinctions on 6 islands) and the northern Pacific Ocean (31 extinctions on 15 islands). In the southern Indian Ocean region, 33 of the 39 extinctions

were from the Mascarene Islands. In the northern Pacific, 17 of the 31 extinctions occurred on five islands in the Hawaiian Archipelago, 12 of these being on Hawaii (Fig. 3).

Island sizes

Table 9 compares the sizes of islands that have experienced extinctions. Islands of 100-200 km^2 have experienced the most extinctions (15 on six islands) followed by islands of sizes between 1 500-2 000 km^2. The number of extinctions in these two size ranges is not evenly spaced over the islands concerned. Ten of the 15 extinctions occured on Rodrigues island (in the 100-200 km^2 size category) and 11 on Mauritius (in the 1 500-2 000 km^2 range, within which there are 15 extinctions on five islands). Islands with areas smaller than 100 km^2 have experienced nine extinctions on six islands.

On a coarser island-size resolution, 32 extinctions (23%) have occurred on 17 islands which have a surface area of less than 500 km^2. In the area range 1 500-2 000 km^2, 16 extinctions have occurred on five islands, although within this island size range, 12 extinctions have occurred on two islands with areas between 1 800-1 900 km^2. (11 on Mauritius). Sixteen extinctions have also occurred on one of the larger islands, New Zealand. The next most affected island-size range are islands with areas of between 10 000-12 000 km^2, where three islands have experienced a total of 15 extinctions. Of these, Hawaii experienced 12 extinctions. Réunion and Ryukyu islands have areas between 2 000-3 000 km^2 and these have experienced the next highest number of extinctions with 11 (nine were on Réunion).

Table 7. Summary of the sites that have experienced avian extinctions since 1600 (Sources for island sizes are given in Table 8)

Place	Size (km^2)	# of extinctions
New Zealand	269000	16
Hawaii	10464	12
Mauritius	1865	11
Rodrigues Island	104	10
Réunion Island	2510	9
Chatham Island	960	4
Tahiti	238	4
Mascarene Islands	4479	3
Seychelles	404	3
Lord Howe Island	17	3
Madagascar	594180	2
Jamaica	10991	2
Ryukyu Islands	2196	2
Guadeloupe Island (West Indies)	1780	2
Molokai Island	676	2
Guadelupe Island (Mexico)	298	2
Raiatea Island	238	2
Kosrae Island	109	2
Peel and Bonin Islands	104	2
Norfolk Island	36	2
Colombia		2
Indonesia	1919445	1
Sumatra and Borneo	1219916	1
Java	130987	1
Cuba	114525	1
New Caledonia	19105	1
Fiji Islands	18330	1
Bahamas	11406	1
Canary Islands	7275	1
Kangaroo Island	4351	1
French Polynesia	3940	1
Society and Cook Islands	1880	1
Bering Island	1593	1
Oahu Island	1536	1
King Island	1098	1
Martinique Island	1079	1
Choiseul Island (Solomon Islands)	1000	1
Dominica	751	1
Aukland Island	606	1
Tanna Island	549	1
Laysan Island	500	1
Guam	450	1
Lanai Island	365	1
Grand Cayman Islands	220	1

Table 7 (cont.)

ohnpei Island	177	
Moorea	132	1
Bonin Island	93	1
Ascension Island	88	1
Wake Island	8	1
Stephen Island	2.6	1
Carolina, USA		1
Eastern Punjab, India		1
Eastern USA		1
Florida, USA		1
USA		1
New England, Canada		1
Mexico		1
Guatemala		1
Paraguay, Uruguay, Brazil, Argentina		1
Australia		1
North Atlantic islands, Canada, UK,		1
Denmark, Faeroe Islands, Greenland,		
Russia		
SE USA and Cuba		1
		138

Table 8. Regional summary of sites that have experienced avian extinctions since 1600.

The key to the symbols next to the island area column is at the end of the table and gives the source from which the island sizes were obtained.

N Pacific: (N of the Equator)	Number of extinctions	Area (km^2)	
Sumatra and Borneo	1	1219916	a,d
Hawaii Island	12	10464	e
Ryukyu Islands	2	2196	a
Bering Island	1	1593	c
Oahu Island	1	1536	e
Molokai Island	2	676	c
Laysan Island	1	500+	c
Guam	1	450	a
Lanai Island	1	365	c
Guadelupe Island (Mexico)	2	298	c
Pohnpei Island	1	177	b
Kosrae Island	2	109	c
Both Bonin and Peel islands	2	104	f
Bonin Islands	1	93	a
Wake Island	1	8	a
	31		

Passerines 21
Non-passerines 10

S Pacific: (S of Equator)

New Zealand	16	269000	b
Java	1	130987	c
New Caledonia	1	19105	a
Fiji Islands	1	18330	a
Kangaroo Island	1	4351	c
French Polynesia	1	3940	a
Society and Cook Islands	1	1880	a
King Island	1	1098	c
Tahiti	4	1042	a
Choiseul Island (Solomon Islands)	1	1000	c
Chatham Island	4	960	b
Aukland Island	1	606	c
Tanna Island	1	549	c
Raiatea Island	2	238	a
Moorea	1	132	c
Norfolk Island	2	36	a
Lord Howe Island	3	17	c
Stephen Island	1	2.6	f
	43		

Passerines 10
Non-passerines 33

Table 8 (cont.)

N Atlantic islands:

Cuba	1	114525	a
Bahamas	1	11406	d
Jamaica	2	10991	c
Canary Islands	1	7275	a
Guadeloupe Island (West Indies)	2	1780	a
Martinique Island (WI)	1	1079	a
Dominica	1	751	a
Grand Cayman Islands	1	220	d
	10		

Passerines 1
Non-passerines 9

S Atlantic islands

Ascension Island (Non-passerine)	1	88	a

S Indian Ocean islands:

Indonesia	1	1919445	a
Madagascar	2	594180	a
All three Mascarene Islands	3	4479	a
Réunion	9	2510	a
Mauritius	11	1865	a
Seychelles	3	404	a
Rodrigues	10	104	a
	39		

Passerines 7
Non-passerines 32

Mainland

Australia	1
Eastern Punjab, India	1
Eastern USA	1
Carolina, USA	1
Florida, USA	1
USA	1
New England, Canada	1
Guatemala	1
Mexico	1
Colombia	2
Paraguay, Uruguay, Brazil, Argentina	1
	12

Passerines 3
Non-passerines 9

Table 8 (cont.)

Both mainland and island

SE USA and Cuba		1
N. Atlantic		1
		2
Passerines	0	
Non-passerines	2	

Totals:

Passerines	42
Non-passerines	96
	138

Reference key:

a	Times Atlas of the World (1975)
b	Graves (1990)
c	Goetz (1968)
d	Cook (1981)
e	Pratt *et al.* (1987)
f	Fuller (1987)

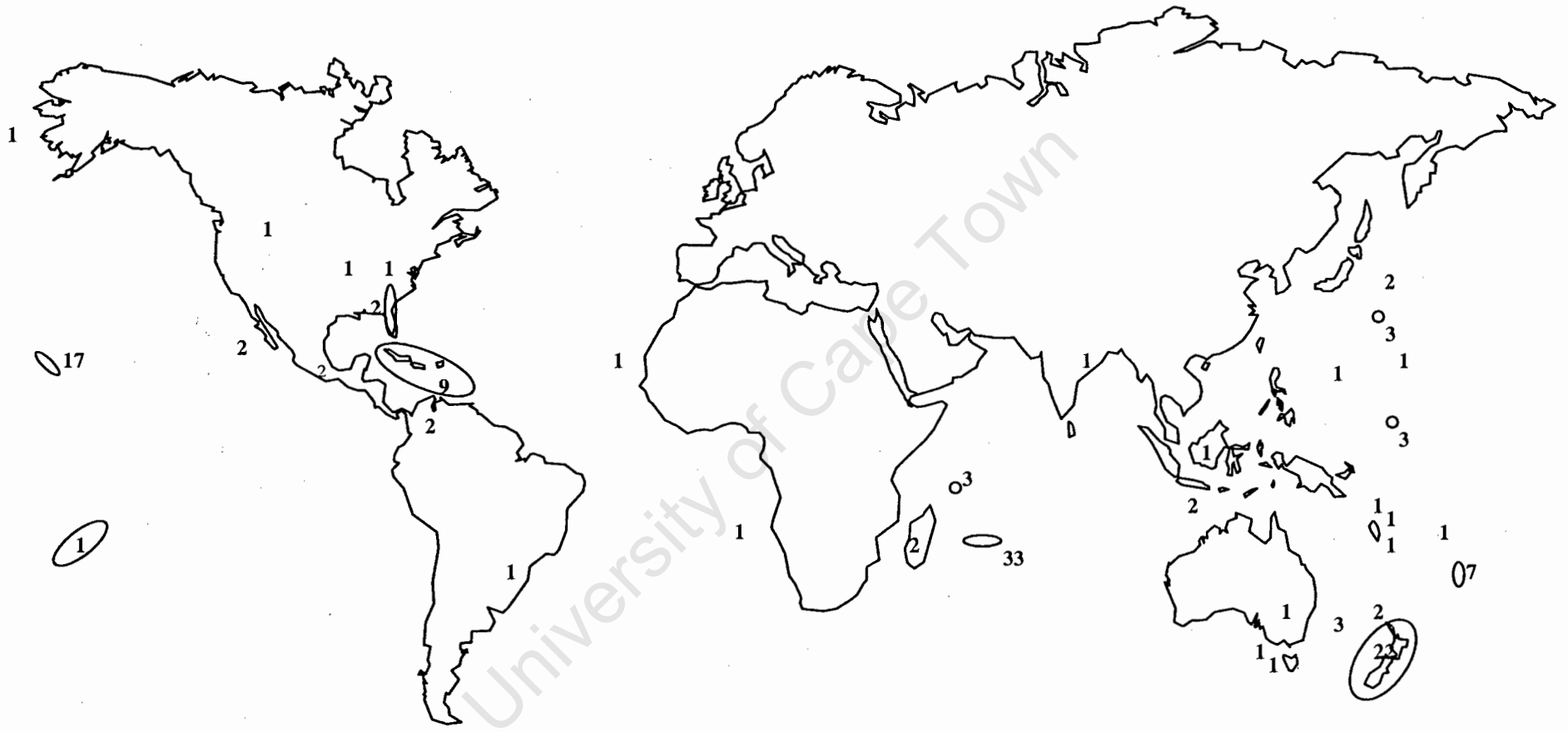


Figure 3. Global distribution of extinct avifauna represented as the number of species by locality

Table 9. Comparison between island size and extinction frequency

Island size (km^2)	Number of extinctions	Number of islands affected
0 - 100	9	6
100 - 200	15	5 (10 on Rodrigues)
200 - 300	3	3
300 - 400	1	Lanai
400 - 500	4	2
500 - 600	2	2
600 - 700	3	2
700 - 800	1	Dominica
800 - 900	0	0
900 - 1000	4	Chatham Island
1000 - 1500	7	4
1500 - 2000	16	5 (11 on Mauritius)
2000 - 3000	11	2 (9 on Réunion)
3000 - 10000	6	4
10000 - 12000	15	3 (12 on Hawaii)
18330	1	Fiji islands
19105	1	New Caledonia
114525	1	Cuba
130987	1	Java
269000	16	New Zealand
594180	2	Madagascar
1219916	1	Borneo and Sumatra
1919455	1	Indonesia

Endemicity

Of the 138 extinct species, perhaps only one was not endemic to a particular island or island group or to a localised mainland region. The Great Auk inhabited a region that stretched across the entire north Atlantic from Canada to Russia including Iceland, Greenland, Denmark, the Faeroe Islands, Funk Island and the UK (Fuller 1987). Some species inhabited an island group, amongst these being the Red-moustached Fruit Dove *Ptilinopus mercierii*, found on islands in French Polynesia and Grace's Emerald *Chlorostilbon bracei* in the Bahamas (IUCN e-mailed list). On the mainland, the Glaucous Macaw *Anodorynchus glaucus* was found in four countries in South America. In most cases, however, the species that became extinct were restricted to one island or country only. In only 24 cases did extinct species inhabit an island group, two or more islands in close proximity, or more than one country.

Migratory birds and extinction

Of the 138 extinctions, 133 species were non-migratory. Two species to have become extinct were almost certainly migratory, the Labrador Duck *Camptorhynchus labradorius* and the Passenger Pigeon (Fuller 1987). The Great Auk, the New Zealand Little Bittern *Ixobrychus novaezelandiae* and Townsend's Finch *Spiza townsendi* might have been migratory but there is little proof of this (Fuller 1987).

Phylogeny of extinction

Orders

Nineteen of the current avian orders (23 according to Monroe and Sibley (1993) and 31 according to Clements (1991)) have experienced historic extinctions. One order, the Aepyornithidae, has lost all it's species. The following section details extinction rates and causes of five orders that have experienced the highest number of extinctions. The orders examined are the Passeriformes (30% of all recent extinctions (n=42)), the Psittaciformes with (n=21), the Gruiformes (n=15), Columbiformes (n=12) and Dinornithiformes (n=10). Together, these orders account for 72% of all bird extinctions since 1600.

Passeriformes

The order Passeriformes hold the most families and species so it is not surprising that this order has experienced the most extinctions. It is best put into context when comparing all the species in the order that have become extinct since 1600 (42) with the number of species, extinct and extant, that have existed from 1600 (5781 - Monroe and Sibley 1993). These 42 extinct species thus account for only 0.73% of the Passeriformes that have existed since 1600, much less than the average of 1.44% for all bird species. Seven of the 12 extinctions that have occurred since 1950 have been passeriform and almost 50% of all passerine extinctions have occurred this century (Table 10). The highest rate of passerine extinction occurred between 1850 and 1949, however, when 25 species became extinct. The 19th Century saw 18 extinctions, only two less

than the 20th Century. The period 1600-1799 saw only 4 passerine extinctions. This order contains seven of the nine most recent extinctions, all of which occurred on islands. The other two most recent extinctions are of Podicipediformes. Only three passerine species have been lost from mainland areas, one each in North, Central and South America, the two most recent being in 1910 and 1912. Of the 42 passerine extinctions, habitat loss features in 15 cases, introduced predators in 14, and the causes of 13 extinctions are unknown or uncertain. Exploitation is known to be the cause of only one extinction, the Huia *Heteralocha acutirostris* of New Zealand.

Table 10. Chronology of passeriform extinctions.

Date	'00 - '49	'50 - '99	Total
1600 - 1699	1	1	2
1700 - 1799	1	1	2
1800 - 1899	6	12	18
1900 - 1996	13	7	20

Psittaciformes

The highest extinction rate of psittaciforms occurred between 1750 and 1849 (Table 11). The 20th Century has seen only three psittaciform extinctions, all in mainland areas and each on a different continent. These are the only mainland extinctions in the order. There has not been a psittaciform extinction on an island since 1885 when the Cuban Red Macaw *Ara tricolor* became extinct. Of the 21 extinctions, exploitation and/or habitat destruction has featured in 13 cases. Introduced predators feature in four cases while the causes of seven extinctions are uncertain or unknown. Five percent of all Psittaciformes to have existed since 1600 have become extinct, almost 3.5 times the average for all bird species.

Table 11. Chronology of psittaciform extinctions.

Date	'00 - '49	'50 - '99	Total
1600 - 1699	0	1	1
1700 - 1799	1	6	7
1800 - 1899	5	5	10
1900 - 1996	2	1	3

Gruiformes

As with the passerines, the highest number of extinctions among the Gruiformes occurred between 1850 and 1949 (Table 12). The most recent extinction was in 1973 in Fiji, this also being the only gruiform extinction since 1945. All gruiform extinctions are from the rail family and all have occurred on islands. Introduced predators have featured in seven extinctions, exploitation in five and habitat destruction in three. Causes of two extinctions are uncertain or unknown. Of all the gruiform species that have existed since 1600, 7% have become extinct, almost 5 times the average for all birds. The date of one gruiform extinction (Sharpe's Rail *Rallus sharpei*) is unknown.

Table 12. Chronology of gruiform extinctions.

Date	'00 - '49	'50 - '99	Total
1600 - 1699	0	3	
1700 - 1799	1	0	1
1800 - 1899	2	2	4
1900 - 1996	5	1	6

Columbiformes

The period 1850-1950 saw the highest extinction rate amongst the Columbiformes when five species became extinct (Table 13). The 18th and 20th centuries have each experienced four extinctions. The most recent columbiform extinction, the island-dwelling Ryukyu Wood Pigeon *Columba jouyi*, occurred in 1936. Only one extinction in this order has occurred on the mainland, that being the extinction of the Passenger Pigeon in the southeastern USA. This order includes perhaps the most well known avian extinction, that of the Dodo *Raphus cucullatus*. Exploitation has been a cause of five extinctions (including the Dodo and Passenger Pigeon), introduced predators and habitat destruction have featured in four and three cases respectively, and the causes of a further two extinctions are unknown. Four percent of all columbiform species that existed since 1600 have become extinct, more than double the average for all birds.

Table 13. Chronology of columbiform extinctions.

Date	'00 - '49	'50 - '99	Total
1600 - 1699	0	1	1
1700 - 1799	2	2	4
1800 - 1899	2	1	3
1900 - 1996	4	0	4

Dinornithiformes

Over half of the dinornithiform (moa) extinctions occurred in the 18th Century (Table 14). Only one species has become extinct post-1765, the Lesser Megalapteryx *Megalapteryx didinus* (by 1850). The moas were endemic to New Zealand. Habitat destruction and exploitation are the documented causes of extinction for three of the ten species, the remaining seven causes being uncertain or unknown. Of all the dinornithiform species to have existed since 1600, 77% have become extinct. All three surviving relatives of the moas, the kiwis (Apterygidae), are endangered (Collar *et al.* 1994).

Table 14. Chronology of dinornithiform extinctions.

Date	'00 - '49	'50 - '99	Total
1600 - 1699	2	1	3
1700 - 1799	5	1	6
1800 - 1899	0	1	1
1900 - 1996	0	0	0

Families

Forty-five avian families have experienced extinctions, 16 passerine and 29 non-passerine. The families that have experienced the highest number of extinctions are the Psittacidae (20), Rallidae (15), Drepanididae (11) and Dinornithidae (10) (Table 15). In the most severely impacted orders it was characteristic that the extinctions were confined to only one family. This was completely true for the Gruiformes and Dinornithiformes where all extinctions were within the Rallidae and Dinornithidae respectively. It was 95% true for the Psittaciformes (one

extinction not in the family Psittacidae), and 67% true for the Columbiformes (eight species of Columbidae becoming extinct and four (all) species of Raphidae).

Three families have lost all member species, the Dinornithidae (ten extinctions), the Raphidae (four extinctions) and the Aepyornithidae (one extinction). Two-thirds of the family Dromaiidae have become extinct and 40% of the family Acanthisittidae. There are only one and three extant species in each respective family, but these are not threatened. Thirty-five percent of the family Drepanididae have become extinct and, of the 21 extant species, 16 (76%) are threatened.

Proportional extinction rates are highest in small families. Of the 12 families that have lost over 10% of their species since 1600, only the Rallidae has more than 20 extant species. Larger families tended to experience a greater number of extinctions, e.g. the Psittacidae (20 extinctions), Rallidae (15), Columbidae (8) and Sturnidae (7), but the proportional extinction rate has been lower (except for the Rallidae).

Table 15. Listing of families showing (1) the number of species within each that have become extinct since 1600 and (2) the current threat situation of extant species.

Family	Number of species extinct	Percentage of species extinct	Number of Extinctions on islands	Percentage extinctions on islands	% of all species in the family to have become extinct since 1600	# of species currently threatened	# extant species in these families	% of species currently threatened
Psittacidae	20	14	17	85	5	88	349	25
Rallidae	15	11	15	100	11	32	132	24
Drepanididae	11	8	11	100	35	16	21	76
Dinornithidae	10	7	10	100	100	0	0	0
Columbidae	8	6	7	88	3	55	310	18
Sturnidae	7	5	7	100	6	7	144	5
Anatidae*	5	4	4	80	3	25	128	20
Meliphagidae	4	3	4	100	2	11	179	6
Ardeidae	4	3	4	100	6	7	65	11
Raphidae	4	3	4	100	100	0	0	0
Turdidae	3	2	3	100	2	32	176	18
Strigidae	3	2	3	100	4	20	155	13
Dromaiidae†	2	1	2	100	67	0	1	0
Podicepididae	2	1	0	0	10	4	22	18
Falconidae	2	1	2	100	3	6	62	10
Phasianidae	2	1	1	50	1	48	175	27
Scolopacidae	2	1	2	100	2	10	88	11
Tytonidae	2	1	2	100	11	5	17	29
Acanthisittidae	2	1	2	100	40	0	3	0
Sylviidae*	2	1	2	100	0	36	261	14
Zosteropidae	2	1	2	100	2	21	93	23
Emberizidae†	2	1	0	0	0	31	612	4
Pycnonotidae	2	1	2	100	2	12	138	9
Aepyornithidae	1	0	1	100	100	0	0	0

Table 15 (cont.)

Hydrobatidae	1	0	1	100	4	1	22	5
Procellariidae	1	0	1	100	1	27	78	35
Phalacrocoracidae	1	0	1	100	2	8	37	22
Ciconiidae	1	0	1	100	5	5	26	19
Threskiornithidae	1	0	1	100	3	7	33	21
Cathartidae*	1	0	0	0	13	1	7	14
Haematopodidae†	1	0	1	100	7	1	10	10
Alcidae*	1	0	0	0	4	1	22	5
Charadriidae	1	0	1	100	2	9	78	12
Lorridae	1	0	1	100	2	0	53	0
Cuculidae	1	0	1	100	1	8	78	10
Trochilidae	1	0	1	100	0	27	322	8
Alcedinidae	1	0	1	100	1	11	86	13
Pachycephalidae	1	0	1	100	2	0	59	0
Acanthizidae	1	0	1	100	100	0	34	0
Muscicipidae*	1	0	1	100	0	20	117	17
Picidae	1	0	0	0	0	8	216	4
Icteridae	1	0	0	0	1	8	97	8
Ploceidae	1	0	1	100	0	16	118	14
Fringillidae*	1	0	1	100	0	8	170	5
Callaeidae	1	0	1	100	33	1	2	50
Totals	138	100	124	90		633	4,492	14

* Monroe and Sibley (1993) classify this as a sub-family and Clements (1991) and Collar *et al.* (1994) a family.

† Monroe and Sibley (1993) classify this as a tribe and Clements (1991) and Collar *et al.* (1994) a family.

Body size and extinction

Body masses of extinct species were inferred from data contained in Dunning (1993) and are summarised in Appendix 1. For some species it was not possible to infer body mass with any confidence (these are marked "?" in Appendix 1) resulting in 126 species being included in this analysis. Although Appendix 1 lists 127 body masses, the extinction date of one species is not known and not included here. Body masses ranged from 3 g to 500 000 g with a median of 334 g.

Birds with masses between 10-30 g experienced the most extinctions (24) followed by those with masses between 50-100 g and 100-200 g (Table 16). The fewest extinctions have occurred in the mass ranges < 10 g and 1 000-2 000 g (3), and 2 000-5 000 g and > 50 000 g (4). Birds in six of the 11 size ranges were exclusively island species; these ranges are marked with an asterix in Table 16. The very largest and very smallest species were included in these.

Table 16. Chronology of extinction of specific-sized birds on all islands

Size (g)	Time period								Totals
	1600-1650	1650-1700	1700-1750	1750-1800	1800-1850	1850-1900	1900-1950	1950-1995	
<10*						1	1	1	3
10-30		1			2	10	7	4	24
30-50	1	1		2	1	1			6
50-100*			1	2	7	4	5	1	20
100-200			2	2	3	4	8		19
200-500		2	2	2		2	2	1	11
500-1000*	2	4		3	2	3	2	2	18
1000-2000*				1		1		1	3
2000-5000	1	1		1	1				4
5000-50000*	1	2	1	8	2				14
>50000*	1	2				1			4
Totals	6	13	6	21	18	27	25	10	126

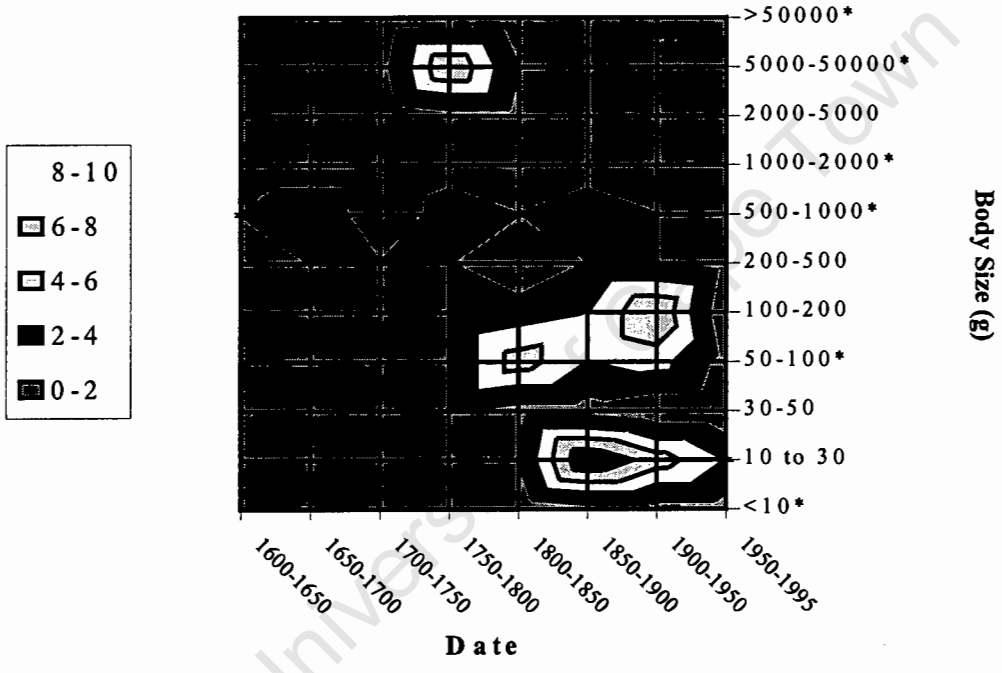
The date of the extinction of one species is unknown and not included in this table.

Table 16 also shows the time periods in which the particular size categories were affected. Birds of masses between 500-1 000 g became extinct over the greatest number of time periods (7). Only between 1700-1750 has a species in this mass range not become extinct, all of the other time periods experiencing multiple extinction. This size category has experienced the fourth highest number of extinctions. Only three birds of size >1 000 g have become extinct in the last

150 years, six in the last 200. This is less than in both the 100-year time intervals prior to 1800. There was no correlation between any one bird size going extinct over any one time period.

Figure 4 indicates a trend towards an increasing proportion of small species becoming extinct in the past 200 years. A greater number of comparatively larger birds (> 500 g) were affected between 1600-1800.

Figure 4. Distribution through time of extinct avifauna of specified body masses on islands of specified size categories

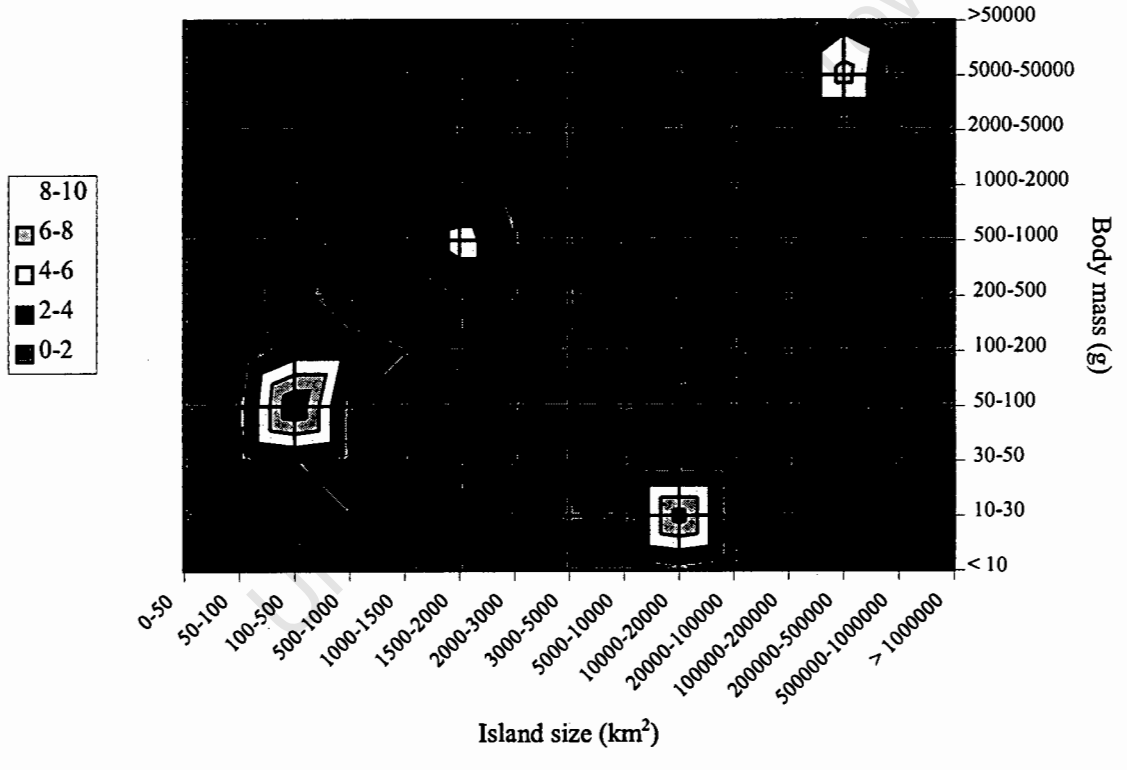


An increase in the incidence of smaller birds (<500 g) becoming extinct is especially evident in the time intervals 1800-1950 where there were 12, 21 and 29 smaller bird extinctions in each respective 50-year interval, or 67%, 84% and 88% of the extinctions in these time intervals. These numbers are higher than in any the time intervals pre-1800 for these sizes. Between 1950 and present there has been a drop in the number of extinctions in this range (7) but these nonetheless make up 70% of all post-1950 extinctions.

Body size, island size and extinction

Although there is no statistically significant correlation between the body masses of extinct birds and island size, Fig. 5 does indicate a few basic patterns which could be predicted from a positive relationship between body size and home range (and hence an inverse relationship with population density). Very large birds (> 50 000 g) are confined to (and have been lost from) the largest islands. Similarly, over 50% of the small birds (< 500g) have been lost from islands < 1 000 km^2 in area.

Figure 5. The relationship between body mass and island size for extinct avifauna on all islands



Part 2 - Discussion

Prehistoric extinctions

The total number of named species (plant and animal) stands between 1.5 and 1.8 million, of which more than 80% are animal. There is uncertainty as to how many species there may be with estimates ranging from 3 million to 80 million or more (May 1988, Stork 1988, Ehrlich 1993, Gaston 1994). Smith *et al.* (1993b) estimate the number of animal species extant today to be about 1.4 million, of which known extant avian species make up approximately 9500 (0.68%). Clements (1991) puts this figure at 9455 and Monroe and Sibley (1993) at 9702.

The average "life span" of higher vertebrate species (fish, reptiles, amphibians, birds and mammals) is estimated to be between 200 000 years and 2 million years (Ehrlich *et al.* 1977), giving a background extinction rate of between 0.2 and 2.0 species per million species per year. Raup (1988) and Wilson (1992) calculated a background extinction rate of one species per million species per year, which is used by Ehrlich (1994) and Stevens (1995a) as the best available figure; this figure is also used by Pimm (1995) for avian species.

Archaeological finds on tropical Pacific islands indicate that more recent prehistoric human activity resulted in the extinction of large numbers of land birds. (Milberg and Tyrberg (1993) define prehistoric as "times previous to the appearance of written sources" and list species from islands that were colonised between 200 and 9 000 years ago - *cf.* pg. 70). Fossil evidence from well studied islands in the Pacific suggest that prehistoric humans caused the extinction of as many as 2000 endemic landbird species across the Pacific (Olson 1989, Steadman 1995). The Polynesians first colonised Pacific islands from New Zealand in the south, to Hawaii in the north and east to Easter Island from around AD 400. They are thought to have extirpated between 500 and 1000 bird species (Pimm *et al.* 1994). Milberg and Tyrberg (1993) use these figures to refute the

notion that "primitive people" were "natural conservationists" who lived in a state of ecological balance without any appreciable effect on the environment.

Pimm (1995) places the avian extinction rate in the Pacific alone over the last two thousand years at one species per ten thousand species per year and terms this rate the "conservative global rate of extinction". Comparisons with background extinction rates show that, even when using this conservative extinction rate, species are being lost 100-1000 times faster than these background rates (May *et al.* 1995, Pimm *et al.* 1995). That these extinction rates are so much higher than the background rate prompted Diamond (1989) and Pimm (1995) to suggest that we are in the midst of a mass extinction, the cause being the impact of man.

Milberg and Tyrberg (1993) state that, in some cases, the extinction of a species could not be separated into "pre-European" and "European" phases as extinction could be a long, drawn-out process. Some species mentioned in this analysis may have been approaching extinction when the first European explorers arrived, e.g. the moas (Anderson 1989), the Raiatea Parakeet *Cyanoramphus ulietanus,* Bay Thrush *Turdus ulietanus* and Mysterious Starling *Aplonis mavornata* (Olson 1986, Fuller 1987).

Historical Extinction Rates

Since 1600, there have been 251 documented higher-vertebrate extinctions (Smith *et al.* 1993b, this study). Avian extinctions account for 55% of these. This high proportion is probably an artefact of birds (and mammals) being well studied, both in intensity and geographically, when compared to other taxa (Diamond 1987, Gaston and May 1992). It does, however beg two questions: (1) are there other taxa that would be found to have experienced higher degrees of extinction if they had been studied as intensively as birds and mammals; and (2) would some taxa show more extinctions if their status was more widely studied on a global scale (all recorded fish extinctions bar one are from North America and Mexico - Gaston and May 1992)?

In 1600, it is assumed that 9840 avian species were in existence (using 138 extinct species and Monroe and Sibley's (1993) figure of 9702 extant species). Given the above background extinction rate, the extinction rate of avian species can be calculated in species per million species per year using the formula:

$$X = \frac{a \,.\, 10^6}{(9840 - b) \,.\, 10^2}$$

where: X is the extinction rate in species/million species/per year (Table 17).

a is the number of extinctions in a 100-year period.

b is the cumulative number of extinctions since 1600 until the relevant time period. This provides the number extant species at the start of that time period.

Table 17. Rates of avian extinction from 1600 until present in species per million species per year.

Period	*Extinction rate (species/million species/year)*
1600 - 1699	18.7
1700 - 1799	29.2
1800 - 1899	49.2
1900 - 1995	44.2
1600 - 1995	35.9

Myers (1979) presented two statistics: (1) the estimated extinction rate of animals between the years 1600 to 1900 was about one every four years; and (2) the estimated extinction rate for 1900 to present was about one species per year. Both these figures are clearly underestimates. Considering avian species alone, there were 93 extinctions in the years 1600 to 1900, this is an extinction rate of approximately one every three years. Between 1900 and present there have been 44 extinctions, an extinction rate of almost one every two years. As birds represent only 0,68% of known animal species, total

animal extinction rates must be higher than this. King (1980) suggests the rate of avian extinction may increase to one species per six months by the end of the century.

For each 100-year time period the avian extinction rate is markedly higher than the background extinction rate. The overall avian extinction rate from 1600 until 1995 is 36 species per million species per year. There was a peak extinction rate between 1850 and 1950 of 51 species per million species per year.

An historical avian extinction rate of approximately 36 species per million species per year translates to 360 000 avian extinctions per million years, using a baseline of 10 000 extant avian species. This is very much higher than Pimm's (1995) background avian extinction rate of one extinction per million species per year. For the 400 year period covered in this study, the extinction rate was one species per 30 000 species per year. Considering only the last 200 years, this rate increases to one species per 20 000 species per year. This is approximately half the rate at which the Polynesians are estimated to have caused bird extinctions on Pacific islands (Pimm 1995).

The sharp increase in extinction rate in the 19th Century coincides with European colonial expansion, which was made partly possible by the industrial revolution (Smith *et al.* 1993b). The utilitarian attitude towards nature was one of the primary causes of extinctions in this time; directly in the form of exploitation for food as in the case of the Spectacled Cormorant *Phalacrocorax perspicillatus* or indirectly through the introduction of predators and destruction of indigenous habitats, as in the cases of the Chatham Island Fernbird *Bowdleria fufescens* and Bonin Wood Pigeon *Columba versicolor* respectively (Greenway 1967, Day 1989). The impact of the Europeans was felt throughout the world, and the elevated extinction rate probably reflects the escalating exploitation of natural resources to fuel the growth of industrial capitalism (Humphries and Fisher 1994). This is supported by Ehrlich (1994) who shows that a correlation exists between rates of extinction and total energy consumption by man.

Causes of historical extinction

Introduced predators

Introduced predators have been the most pervasive cause of extinction on islands. These alien, vertebrates were introduced accidentally or deliberately from continents by the colonising powers. The first period after the introduction of a new predator is expected to be particularly stressful to the indigenous fauna because the predator population typically increases beyond the carrying capacity of the island as easily accessible prey are over-exploited (Bell 1977, Ebenhard 1988).

Historically, oceanic islands mostly lacked mammalian predators, with the result that endemic birds, in contrast to those on continents, had lost the behavioural adaptations that would have allowed them to co-exist with the predators: for example, many taxa are flightless. Of the predators that have been introduced, rats (*Rattus rattus, R. norvegicus* and *R. exulans*) and cats (*Felis catus*) have had the most significant impacts (Moors *et al.* 1992). Birds nesting on the ground or in burrows are at greatest risk from *R. norvegicus*, whereas tree-nesting birds are at greatest risk from *R. rattus*. *Rattus rattus* has caused greater losses of forest birds on oceanic islands than any other rat in recent times, while in the same period *R. norvegicus* has caused greater losses amongst sea birds (Atkinson 1985). One cat caused the extinction of a entire species. The Stephen Island Wren *Xenicus lyalli* was exterminated by a cat named Tibbles, who belonged to the lighthouse keeper on the island, over the space of about a month (Fuller 1987).

Size and behaviour determine a species' vulnerability to rats. Larger birds and birds with aggressive behaviour towards rats (evolved as a result of native predators) are probably better able to protect nests from rats or other introduced predators (Moors and Atkinson 1984, Atkinson 1985).

Introduced birds may also have an effect on the endemic avifauna. Grant (1995) suggests that the impact of introduced mynahs on endemic birds of the Hawaiian islands may have been underestimated. The mynahs are known to eat other birds' eggs.

Exploitation

Exploitation has led to the extinction of many more island birds than mainland birds. Food and feathers were the main motivations behind the exploitation of birds. They were most often taken for food by hungry sailors, e.g. the Dodo, Spectacled Cormorant and Great Auk. In a few cases their feathers were taken for decoration, e.g. Lebat's Conure *Aratinga labati* and the Huia (Day 1991).

Exploitation is known to have been responsible for only two mainland extinctions. These were the Carolina Parakeet and the Passenger Pigeon, both hunted from super-abundance to extinction in the USA (Blockstein and Tordoff 1985, Fuller 1987). The Passenger Pigeon was hunted for food and sport and the Carolina Parakeet for sport and as a pest as it ate crops, although Day (1989) suggests this alone should not have led to its extinction.

Habitat destruction

Although responsible for more island than mainland extinctions (9 compared with 5), proportionally, habitat destruction has been a much more important factor in mainland extinctions than on islands. In mainland areas, it has alone been responsible for 42% of extinctions and, in combination with other factors, for a further 25%. All known causes of mainland avian extinctions involve habitat destruction and all of the mainland extinctions in the last 50 years were due entirely to habitat destruction.

Habitat destruction caused more insular avian extinctions during 1900-1950 than in any other time period (n=5). The Hawaiian islands experienced three of these (two on Hawaii and one on Laysan). Habitat destruction affected mainly passerines during the last

century; only one of the six extinctions, the Laysan Rail *Porzana palmeri*, was non-passerine.

Unknown

The causes of fifty avian extinctions (36%) are unknown. Some of these extinctions could be assigned causes with a high degree of probability based on the knowledge of the causes of extinction in other sympatric species. For example, the seven moa extinctions of unknown cause were probably a result of exploitation and habitat destruction.

Unknown causes may also have been not-so-obvious ecological spin-offs from habitat destruction, exploitation and introduced predators. It is likely that there were other, non-avian extinctions that occurred in places that experienced avian extinctions. These extinctions may have been a food source to some avian species, which themselves subsequently became extinct. Janzen and Martin (1982) and Witmer and Cheke (1991) propose that the extinction of an important seed disperser is likely to alter the composition of the vegetation even when it is not directly affected by man. This alteration may be enough to result in the extinction of species dependent on the "old" habitat for food or nesting. The extinction or near extinction of the endemic Hawaiian plants of the genus *Hibiscadelphus* caused the secondary extinctions of several of its honeycreeper pollinators (Diamond 1989).

Islands where there have been more than one extinction may represent examples of "extinction cascades". Here, an extinction of one species in a complex system could lead to an "extinction cascade" which would affect many species in the system (Diamond 1989). For example, human removal of top predators (jaguars, pumas and harpy eagles) on Barro Colorado Island caused a population surge in medium-sized predators (monkeys and coatimundis) on which the top predators habitually preyed. A surge of medium-sized predators subsequently led to extinctions of ground-nesting birds without any further intervention by man (Terborg and Winter 1980).

Combinations of factors

It is likely that combinations of causes also featured more significantly in extinctions than recorded prior to 1900. In the 17th and 18th Centuries, factors acting in combination may have been overlooked, only later becoming apparent with improved scientific method, observation and recording. Perceptions as to the importance of combinations of factors in causing extinction may have changed over time whereas their incidence may have remained fairly constant.

As well as extinction pressures acting in combination with each other, specific attributes of the birds themselves may predispose them to the effects of such multiple pressures. Flightless or near flightless species like the Dodo, the moas and some rails would be predisposed to the pressures of both introduced predators and exploitation by man for food. On isolated islands lacking indigenous predators, the lack of an escape response towards predators and man resulted in many species succumbing to these dual threats, a case in point being the Laysan Rail (Fuller 1987).

The flocking behaviour of the Passenger Pigeon may have also predisposed it to extinction. These birds relied on communal protection (Blockstein and Tordoff 1985) and, once the great flocks had been destroyed, it may have been only a matter of time before the remaining birds became extinct. The extinction of this species was almost inconceivable in the mid-19th Century, today it stands as perhaps the most spectacular of recent extinctions.

Geography of historical extinctions

Island extinctions

Ninety percent of avian extinctions since 1600 have occurred on islands. This accords with the figure calculated by Johnson and Stattersfield (1990) and is slightly below King's (1985) estimate of 93%.

Island size

There is no clear correlation between island size and the absolute (rather than proportional) probability of extinction. Species have become extinct from islands of all sizes, ranging from very small e.g. Stephen's Island (2.6 km^2) and Wake Island (8 km^2) to very large e.g. Sumatra and Borneo, together covering an area of 1 219 916 km^2. Both small and large islands have experienced one extinction only or many extinctions: Ascension Island (88 km^2) and Java (130 987 km^2) have only experienced one extinction each, whereas Rodrigues (104 km^2) and New Zealand (269 000 km^2) have lost comparatively large numbers of species.

Oceanic regions

The most extinctions in any region have occurred in the southern Pacific (43). All the islands that have experienced three and four extinctions are situated in this region. Only two islands in this region experienced two extinctions. The highest number of affected islands (as well as the island experiencing the most extinctions - New Zealand) are situated in the southern Pacific. There were more non-passerine extinctions than passerine extinctions, which was typical of all the regions except the northern Pacific.

The northern Pacific region has experienced the third most extinctions (after the southern Pacific region and the Indian Ocean region). The island of Hawaii experienced 12

extinctions whereas other islands in the region lost only one or two species. In this region there were more passerine extinctions than non-passerine extinctions; it is the only region in which this has occurred. This is due mainly to the extinctions on the Hawaiian islands: 16 of the 21 passerine extinctions in the region occurred here.

In the northern Atlantic region, all of the extinctions except one have occurred in the Caribbean. Single extinctions per island are typical and only two islands have experienced two extinctions. Nine of the ten extinctions were non-passerine. The southern Atlantic has only one island that has experienced an extinction (Ascension Island), this being a non-passerine extinction. The Atlantic Ocean as a whole has lost relatively few species in historical times.

All of the extinctions in the Indian Ocean occurred on islands south of the Equator. With the exception the southern Atlantic, this oceanic region has the least number of affected islands (6), but has experienced the second highest number of extinctions. These six islands have experienced an average of 6.6 extinctions each, the highest of all the regions. The three Mascarene islands were most severely affected, accounting for 33 of the 39 extinctions. This island group has lost twice as many species as the Hawaiian island group. Thirty-two of the 39 Indian Ocean extinctions were of non-passerines.

Islands most severely affected

Tables 18a-e document the chronology and causes of avian extinctions on the five islands that have lost the most species. New Zealand and Hawaii each had one family that was particularly heavily impacted, the Dinornithidae and the Drepanididae respectively. These families accounted for two thirds and three quarters of the historical extinctions on these islands respectively (Table 19). The Mascarene islands experienced 33 extinctions across a comparatively large number of families. (Tables 18c-e each incorporates the extinction of the three species that inhabited all three islands.)

Table 18a. Chronology and causes of avian extinctions on New Zealand

Year	Cause					Total
	Ex	IP	Ex,HD	HD,IP	Unknown	
1600-1649			1		1	2
1650-1699			1			1
1700-1749					5	5
1750-1799			1			1
1800-1849						0
1850-1899				1	2	3
1900-1949	1			1		2
1950-1996		2				2
	1	2	3	2	8	16

Table 18b. Chronology and causes of avian extinctions on Hawaii

Year	Cause					Total
	HD	IP	Ex,HD	HD, comp disease	Unknown	
1600-1649						
1650-1699						
1700-1749						
1750-1799						
1800-1849						
1850-1899	1	1	1	4	1	8
1900-1949	2					2
1950-1996	1			1		2
	4	1	1	5		12

Table 18c. Chronology and causes of avian extinctions on Mauritius

Year	Cause			Total
	Ex	IP	Unknown	
1600-1649			1	1
1650-1699	2		4	6
1700-1749	2			2
1750-1799			1	1
1800-1849		1	3	4
1850-1899				0
1900-1949				0
1950-1996				0
	4	1	9	14

Table 18d. Chronology and causes of avian extinctions on Rodrigues

Year	Cause				Total
	Ex	IP	Ex,IP	Unknown	
1600-1649				1	1
1650-1699				1	1
1700-1749		1		3	4
1750-1799	3			1	4
1800-1849				2	2
1850-1899			1		1
1900-1949					0
1950-1996					0
	3	1	1	8	13

Table 18e. Chronology and causes of avian extinctions on Réunion

Year	Cause				Total
	Ex	HD	IP	Unknown	
1600-1649				1	1
1650-1699				4	4
1700-1749	1				1
1750-1799	1			1	2
1800-1849		1		2	3
1850-1899			1		1
1900-1949					
1950-1996					
	2	1	1	8	12

New Zealand and Hawaii are the largest of the five islands and are also the ones most recently affected by extinction, the last Mascarene extinction being in 1876 (Table 20). New Zealand has had two historical extinction "episodes", one between 1600 and 1750 when nine species became extinct (all moas) and one between 1850 to the present when seven species have become extinct. Hawaii has had only one "episode", between 1850 to present, when 12 species became extinct. On these two islands, habitat destruction alone or in combination with some other factor (exploitation on New Zealand and competition and disease on Hawaii) was the primary cause of extinction, resulting in 15 of the 28 extinctions (Table 19).

Table 19. Summaries of avian extinctions and their causes on the five islands that have experienced the most extinctions. (Causes from Appendix 1)

a.) New Zealand

Order	Family	Common Name	Scientific Name	Date	Cause
Dinornithiformes	Dinornithidae		*Dinornis maximus*	1850	?
		Slender Moa	*Dinornis torosis*	1670	Ex,HD
		Greater Broad-billed Moa	*Euryapteryx gravis*	1640	Ex,HD
			Euryapteryx geranoides	Before 1700	?
			Anomalopteryx parvus	Before 1800	?
			Anomalopteryx didiformes	Before 1800	?
			Anomalopteryx oweni	Before 1800	?
		Lesser Megalapteryx	*Megalapteryx didinus*	1765	Ex,HD
			Megalapteryx hectori	Before 1800	?
			Megalapteryx benhami	Before 1800	?
Ciconiiformes	Ardeidae	New Zealand Little Bittern	*Ixobrychus novaezelandiae*	1900	?
Galliformes	Phasianidae	New Zealand Quail	*Coturnix novaezelandiae*	1868	?;HD,IP
Strigiformes	Strigidae	Laughing Owl	*Sceloglaux albifacies*	1910	HD,IP
Passeriformes	Acanthasittidae	Bush Wren	*Xenicus longipes*	1965	IP
	Pachycephalinae	Popio	*Turnagra capensis*	1955	IP
	Callaeidae	Huia	*Heteralocha acutirostris*	1907	Ex

b.) Hawaii

Order	Family	Common Name	Scientific Name	Date	Cause
Gruiformes	Rallidae	Sandwich Rail	*Porzana sandwichensis*	1898	IP
Passeriformes	Meliphagidae	Kioea	*Cheatoptila augustipluma*	1860	??
		Hawaian O'o	*Moho nobilis*	11934	HD
	Drepanididae	Great Amakihi	*Verido sagittirostris*	1900	HD
		Greater Koa Finch	*Psittirostra palmeri*	1896	HD, disease, competition or all 3
		Akiola	*Hemignathus obscurus*	1960	HD, disease, competition or all 3
		Lesser Koa Finch	*Psittirostra flaviceps*	1891	HD, disease, competition or all 3
		Kona Finch	*Psittirostra kona*	1894	HD, disease, competition or all 3
		Mamo	*Drepanis pacifica*	1899	Ex,HD
		Kona Grosbeak	*Chloridops kona*	1894	HD, disease, competition or all 3
		Kakawihie	*Paroreomyza flammea*	1963	HD
		Ula-Ai-Hawane	*Ciridops anna*	1892	?,HD

c.) Mauritius

Order	Family	Common Name	Scientific Name	Date	Cause
Ciconiiformes	Ardeidae	Mauritius Night Heron	*Nycticorax mauritianus*	By 1700	?
Anseriformes	Anatidae	Mauritian Duck	*Anas theodori*	1696	?
		Mauritian Shellduck	*Alopochen mauritianus*	1698 ?	?
Gruiformes	Rallidae	Mauritian Red Rail	*Aphanapteryx bonasia*	1693	Ex
		Mascarene Coot	*Fulicia newtoni*	1693	?
Columbiformes	Raphidae	Dodo	*Raphus cucullatus*	1655	Ex
	Columbidae	Dutch Pigeon	*Alectroenus nitidissima*	1835	?,IP
Psittaciformes	Psitticadae	Mauritius Grey Parrot	*Lophopsittacus bensoni*	1765	?
		Broad-billed Parrot	*Lophopsittacus mauritanus*	1680	?
		Mascarene Parrot	*Mascarinus mascarinus*	1834	?
Strigiformes	Tytonidae	Mauritius Barn Owl	*Tyto sauzieri*	1700	?, Ex
		Newton's Barn Owl	*Tyto newtoni*	1700	?, Ex
	Strigidae	Commerson's Scops Owl	*Scops commersoni*	1836	?
Passeriformes	Sturnidae	White Mascarene Starling	*Necropsar leguati*	1840	?

d.) Rodrigues

Order	Family	Common Name	Scientific Name	Date	Cause
Procellariiformes	Procellariidae	?	*Pterodroma sp.*	1726	?
Ciconiiformes	Ardeidae	Rodrigues Night Heron	*Nycticorax megacephalus*	1761	?
Gruiformes	Rallidae	Legaut's Rail	*Aphanapteryx leguati*	1760	Ex
		Mascarene Coot	*Fulica newtoni*	1693	?
Columbiformes	Raphidae	Rodrigues Solitaire	*Pezohaps solitarius*	1765	Ex
	Columbidae	Rodrigues Pigeon	*Columba rodericana*	1726	?, IP
Psittaciformes	Psitticadae	Rodrigues Parrot	*Necropsittacus rodericanus*	1761	Ex
		Rodrigues Ring - necked Parakeet	*Psittacula exul*	1876	?, Ex,IP
		Mascarene Parrot	*Mascarinus mascarinus*	1834	?
Strigiformes	Strigidae	Rodrigues Little Owl	*Athene murivora*	1726	?
Passeriformes	Sturnidae	Rodrigues Starling	*Necropsar rodericanus*	1726	?
		White Mascarene Starling	*Necropsar leguati*	1840	?
	Pycnonotidae	?	*Hypsipetes sp.*	1600's	?

e.) Réunion

Order	Family	Common Name	Scientific Name	Date	Cause
Ciconiiformes	Ardeidae	?	*Nycticorax sp.*	By 1700	?
	Ciconidae	?	*Ciconia sp.*	By 1674	?
	Threskiornithidae	Réunion Flightless Ibis	*Borbonibis latipes*	1773	?
Falconiformes	Falconidae	?	*Falco sp.*	1674	?
Gruiformes	Rallidae	Mascarene Coot	*Fulica newtoni*	1693	?
Columbiformes	Raphidae	Réunion Dodo / Solitiare	*Raphus solitarius*	1715	Ex
		White Dodo	*Victoriornis imperialis*	1770	Ex
Psittaciformes	Psitticadae	Réunion Ring - necked Parakeet	*Psittacula eques*	1800	HD
		Mascarene Parrot	*Mascarinus mascarinus*	1834	?
Passeriformes	Plocidae	?	*Foudia sp.*	1671	?
	Sturnidae	Réunion Crested Starling	*Fregilupus varius*	1860	IP
		White Mascarene Starling	*Necropsar leguati*	1840	?

Table 20. Chronological analysis of extinction on the five most severely affected islands

Year	N.Z.	Hawaii	Mauritius	Rodrigues	Réunion	All three Mascarene Islands	Total
1600-1649	2		1	1	1		5
1650-1699	1		5	0	3	1	10
1700-1749	5		2	4	1		12
1750-1799	1		1	4	2		8
1800-1849			2	0	1	2	5
1850-1899	2	8		1	1		12
1900-1949	3	2					5
1950-1996	2	2					4
	16	12	11	10	9	3	61

In the Mascarene islands, all extinctions occurred before 1877 (Table 19). There was a steady number of extinctions from 1650 until 1850, 11, seven, seven and nine extinctions occurring in the consecutive 50-year time periods. Unknown factors contributed to the highest number of extinctions (19 of 33). Of the known factors, exploitation was the most important, resulting in ten extinctions (one in combination with another factor). From these islands an entire family has become extinct, the Raphidae. This family contained only four species, two of which were endemic to Rodrigues. The Raphidae is one of two recently extant families which has lost all its species.

In Hawaii and the Mascarenes a single factor led to the extinction of many species. On Hawaii it was habitat destruction and on the Mascarenes it was exploitation. On Hawaii the most recent extinctions also involve habitat destruction and the most important current causes of threat to endangered and critical species are habitat destruction and introduced predators (Collar *et al.* 1994). Avian malaria is also an important threat to bird species on Hawaii and is included by Collar *et al.* (1994) with introduced species in their threat codes. New Zealand may have two prominent causes if it is assumed that the extinction of the moas was driven by exploitation and habitat destruction. Here, however, the two most recent cases of extinction are ascribed to introduced predators and these, together with habitat alteration, are the most important threats to critical and endangered species in New Zealand. On the Mascarenes there has not been an extinction for 120 years, but Collar *et al.* (1994) report that there are currently nine endemic species in the endangered and critical categories. The causes of threat on Mauritius and Rodrigues are habitat destruction and introduced predators: on Réunion, exploitation remains the greatest threat.

Islands experiencing between two and four extinctions.

Fourteen islands fell into this grouping (Table 21), more species becoming extinct in the first 50 years of this century than in any other time period. In the last 47 years, there has been only one extinction on these islands, the lowest rate since 1750. Extinctions on all but two of the 14 islands are spread over a number of time periods. Molokai and Guadeloupe Islands have only lost species in the 20th Century. Of the four extinctions on these islands, habitat destruction was responsible for three. Overall, however, of the known causes of extinction on these 14 islands, the most important has been introduced predators (Table 22). Predators have also accounted for the most recent extinction on these islands. The next most important known cause was exploitation. Introduced predators do not seem to have affected species on the two largest islands in this grouping, *viz.* Jamaica and Madagascar.

Islands experiencing one extinction

Thirty islands have experienced single avian extinctions (Table 23). The extinction rate on these islands peaked in the time period 1900-1949 when 14 species became extinct; the time period 1950-1996 saw the lowest number of extinctions since 1750, consistent with general trend in extinction rates. Island sizes ranged from very small to large and there was no correlation between island size and extinction probability. Bird body sizes ranged from large to small and no relationship was found between body size and probability of extinction on these islands. Eighteen of the 30 islands were tropical. Twelve of the birds on these tropical islands were comparatively small (< 200 g), all the passerine species (7) being <80 g. Considering all 30 islands, over two thirds of the species were non-passerine.

Of the known causes of extinction, habitat destruction alone accounted for the most extinctions. It was not, however, as over-ridingly important as were exploitation and introduced predators on islands that have experienced more than one extinction. When viewing combinations of all the factors, habitat destruction played a role in 16 extinctions, exploitation in 11 and introduced predators in ten. There were 12 extinctions from unknown causes, all between 1800 and the present.

Table 21. Chronological summary of avian extinction on islands experiencing between two and four extinctions.

Island	1600	1650	1700	1750	1800	1850	1900	1950	Total
Chatham Island		1			1	1	1		4
Tahiti				1	1		2		4
Seychelles						2		1	3
Lord Howe Island					1		2		3
Peel and Bonin Island					1	1			2
Jamaica				1	1				2
Norfolk Island						1	1		2
Raiatea Island				2					2
Ryukyu Island					1		1		2
Guadeloupe Island			1	1					2
Kosrae Island					1	1			2
Molokai Island							2		2
Guadelupe Island							2		2
Madagascar		1					1		2
	0	2	1	5	7	6	12	1	34

Table 22. A summary of the causes of extinction on islands experiencing between two and four avian extinctions.

Island	Ex	HD	IP	Ex/HD	Ex/Iv	HD/IP	Other	Unknown	Total
Chatham Island			1			2		1	4
Tahiti		1	3						4
Seychelles			1					2	3
Lord Howe Island		1	1					1	3
Peel and Bonin Island			2						2
Jamaica								2	2
Norfolk Island		1						1	2
Raiatea Island			2						2
Ryukyu Island								2	2
Guadeloupe Island		1		1					2
Kosrae Island			2						2
Molokai Island		1				1			2
Guadelupe Island		1				1			2
Madagascar				2					2
Total	5	1	12	3	0	4	0	9	34

Table 23. Cause and chronology of avian extinction on islands experiencing a single extinction.

Date	Cause								Total
	Ex	HD	IP	Ex/HD	Ex/IP	HD/IP	Other	Unknown	
1600-1649									0
1650-1699		1							1
1700-1749									0
1750-1799			1	1					2
1800-1849					2		1		3	6
1850-1899		1	1	1	1	1			1	6
1900-1949		2	3	2			1	1	2	11
1950-1996				2					1	3
Unknown									1	1
		4	5	6	3	1	2	1	8	30

Some conclusions

On the five islands that have experienced a large number of extinctions, habitat destruction was the most important known factor on the larger islands of New Zealand and Hawaii. On the smaller Mascarene islands most extinctions were a result of habitat destruction and exploitation (although here, over two-thirds of the causes are unknown). The impact of introduced predators may have been missed as a result of poor scientific observation, the majority of the extinctions of unknown cause occurring before 1800. Birds on the five islands ranged in size from very large (moas and Raphidae) to small (Bush Wren *Xenicus longipipes* and Rodrigues Starling *Necrospar rodericanus* on New Zealand and Rodrigues respectively). Many of the Hawaiian extinctions were of small birds belonging to a single family (Drepanididae).

On islands that have experienced between two and four extinctions, introduced predators were the cause in most cases. The species affected were from across the body size range. The islands affected were generally smaller than 1000 km^2. On these islands only one species has become extinct in the last 47 years, perhaps indicating that on these smaller islands, endemic species prone to extinction (through introduced predators and exploitation) had become extinct before 1900 (*cf.* Pimm *et al.* 1994).

On islands that have experienced single extinctions, there appears to be little relationship between island size and the body size of extinct species. Although habitat destruction played a role in the most extinctions in these islands, it was not significantly more important than introduced predators and exploitation as causative agents.

Mainland extinctions

Regions that human populations have expanded into and filled over the last 400 years have recorded extinctions. In parts of the world that have a long history of human occupancy, there have been relatively few extinctions recorded over the last 400 years (Europe, much of continental Asia, Africa). This suggests that extinctions in these regions took place before 1600 (Smith *et al.* 1993b). There have been no avian extinctions in Europe in the last 400 years and only one on the Asian mainland, the Himalayan Mountain Quail *Ophrysia superciliosa* in the early 1870's. There have also been no avian extinctions in Africa in the past 400 years. The advent of colonialism in Africa does not seem to have had as great an impact on African avifauna as has been the case elsewhere. There have, however, been nine mammalian extinctions in this time (Day 1989).

Since 1600, 10 bird species have become extinct in the Americas. Five of these were in North America, two in Central America and three in South America. Together these make up 83% of all mainland extinctions. Both the earliest recorded and the most recent mainland extinctions occurred here. Habitat destruction was the most important cause of extinction, being solely responsible for five extinctions and jointly responsible for five. It is likely that even in the demise of the Carolina Parakeet, habitat destruction, and not only exploitation (for food, feathers and sport), played a role. As indigenous habitat was cleared to make way for farmlands, the birds became to be regarded as pests as they fed on crops and were shot (Day 1989). The causes of extinction of three species in the Americas are unknown.

The two non-American extinctions were the Himalayan Mountain Quail in the 1870's and Australia's Paradise Parrot *Psephotus pulcherrinus* in 1927. The cause of the former's extinction is unknown and that of the latter a combination of habitat destruction and introduced predators (Fuller 1987, Day 1989).

The three most recent mainland extinctions were from central and South America (two grebes and a macaw). These extinctions form one quarter of all historical mainland extinctions and constitute the highest rate of mainland extinction since 1600. This lends support to the concern that exists over the threat to South American bird species which have restricted ranges and specialised habitat requirements (Myers 1988, Brooks and Balmford 1996).

Taxonomy of extinction

Orders

Four orders have lost 10% or more of their species, the Aepyornithiformes (100%), Dinornithiformes (77%), Casuariiformes (27%) and Podicipediformes (10%). Extinct species in the first three orders lived on islands, whereas the two extinct podicipediforms inhabited Guatemala and Colombia. One family in each order contained all the extinct species, the Aepyornithidae (one species), Dinornithidae (moas, ten species), Casuariidae (emus, two species) and the Podicipedidae (grebes, two species).

A combination of habitat destruction and exploitation were the causes of all the extinctions in these orders except the grebes, where habitat destruction alone was responsible. For the unknown causes of the moa extinctions, it is reasonable to assume that the known causes (exploitation and habitat destruction) accounted for these.

Extinctions among the Aepyornithiformes, Dinornithiformes and Casuariiformes occurred before the sharp rise in the extinction rate between 1850 - 1950; the podicipediform extinctions occurred after this.

Families

Intuitively, a greater proportion of species in small families has become extinct than in larger families. It would take only a few extinctions (in some cases only one) to affect a large proportion of the species complement of small families. The Callaeidae, for example, had only three extant species in 1600, one of which became extinct, resulting in a loss of one third of the family.

The greatest absolute numbers of extinctions have occurred in large families. The Psittacidae, with 360 extant species in 1600, have experienced the most extinctions (20), representing 6% of the extant species at the time.

Passerines make up over half the number of extant avian species. On the basis of these numbers it not surprising that 30% of post-1600 extinctions are of passerines. Of the known causes of passerine extinction, habitat destruction and introduced predators featured in all but one case, highlighting the vulnerability of this order to man's impact through these two agents.

Although non-passerines form less than half of the avifaunal compliment, they have experienced 70% of the extinctions in the last 400 years. This would indicate that the extinction pressures exerted in this time period, especially introduced predators and exploitation, affected non-passerines more severely than passerine species. The generally larger non-passerines (e.g. moas, larger parrots, dodos) were targeted for exploitation for food by colonising Europeans whereas smaller, ground-dwelling species were more at risk from introduced predators (e.g. rails).

Prehistoric extinctions

Milberg and Tyrberg (1993) have documented 41 avian families that experienced prehistoric (pre-1600) extinctions. They define prehistoric as "times previous to the appearance of written sources" and list species from islands that were colonised between 200 and 9 000 years ago. Table 24 details prehistoric extinctions of some selected families (data from Milberg and Tyrberg (1993)). One hundred and seventy seven of the 200 documented prehistoric extinctions are included. Families excluded experienced fewer than five extinctions.

The families with the greatest number of species which became extinct in prehistoric times are the Rallidae (34), Anatidae (25) and the Drepanididae (23). Species in these families were lost mostly from Pacific islands. Seven families accounted for almost two-thirds (135) of the recorded pre-historic extinctions.

Table 24. The number of prehistoric bird extinctions from selected families. (After Milberg and Tyrberg 1993).

Family	Mediterranean	Atlantic Ocean	Caribbean	Indian Ocean	Pacific Ocean	Total
Aepyornithidae				7		7
Dinornithidae					13	13
Procellariidae	1	2			2	5
Anatidae	2		1	2	20	25
Acciptiridae	1		4		8	13
Megapodiidae					5	5
Rallidae			4	1	29	34
Scolopacidae			2		3	5
Columbidae	1		1		11	13
Psittacidae			2		3	5
Tytonidae	2		5		1	8
Strigidae	3		6		5	14
Drepanididae					23	23
Corvidae	2		1		4	7
Total	12	2	26	10	127	177

The causes of prehistoric extinctions cannot be determined. As is the case for much recent extinction, the ultimate cause of extinction may be obscure or its importance difficult to evaluate. Milberg and Tyrberg (1993) list five causes that they believe were important in

prehistoric extinctions: over-exploitation, introduced predators, habitat destruction, depletion of food supplies, and disease. These can be grouped into the causes listed in this study.

Large birds were probably more at risk from over-exploitation than small birds which were more at risk from introduced predators such as *Rattus exulans* (*Rattus rattus, R. norvegicus* and feral cats were not spread by prehistoric man - Milberg and Tyrberg 1993). The importance of habitat destruction is likely to have varied between islands, but New Zealand, Easter Island and islands in the Mediterranean probably were heavily impacted by habitat loss (Milberg and Tyrberg 1993).

The majority of documented prehistoric extinctions occurred on islands in the Pacific, followed by Caribbean and Mediterranean islands. Islands in the Indian and Atlantic Oceans (excluding Caribbean islands) experienced relatively few losses. This may simply be because there are fewer islands in these regions (compared to the Pacific and Caribbean regions) and therefore fewer birds. Fourteen of the 41 families listed by Milberg and Tyrberg (1993) did not experience extinctions on Pacific islands. Island size does not seem to have had an effect on the severity of extinctions; the large islands of New Zealand, Cuba and the smaller Hawaiian islands all lost a large part of their prehistoric avifauna (Milberg and Tyrberg 1993).

Extinction filters

At the end of the Pliocene (2 mya.), sea temperatures dropped dramatically with the onset of Northern-Hemisphere glaciation. In the Caribbean this resulted in the extinction of an estimated 36% of the molluscan genera and subgenera by the early Pleistocene (Jackson 1995). In subsequent and equally severe Pleistocene cycles of warming and cooling and associated sea-level changes, there was relatively little impact on the surviving Caribbean molluscs. An explanation for this is that the initial exposure to climatic changes purged

marine faunas of thermally sensitive taxa, leaving behind a core of species that were relatively resilient to further temperature fluctuations (Jackson 1995). Species less resilient to climatic change are thus filtered out.

Extinction filters may be used to explain the vulnerability of biotas to modern day challenges. Introduced rats have been one of the greatest anthropogenic causes of recent avian extinctions (Milberg and Tyrberg 1993, Moors *et al.* 1992), but the vulnerability of island avifaunas to these has differed widely. Some rat introductions had catastrophic effects on the island avifauna but in other cases the introduction of rats has been followed by the co-existence of rats and native birds (Milberg and Tyrberg 1993). A possible explanation of these differences may lie in the presence or absence of indigenous predators.

Islands that have historically supported native rodents (e.g. Christmas Island and the Galapagos Islands) appear to have avifaunas that are relatively resistant to rats (Atkinson 1985). The generally lower vulnerability of birds on tropical, as opposed to temperate islands in terms of threat from predators, may be linked to the historical distribution of land crabs, potentially important predators of chicks (Atkinson 1985). In these cases, the retention of anti-predator traits may have ensured that native birds were less susceptible to introduced rats than were birds from islands that lacked land crabs.

The growing awareness of the scale of extinctions caused by prehistoric humans suggests that, as well as climatic and biotic factors, humans may have selectively purged naive biotas of particularly vulnerable species (Balmford 1996). This long-term, human-induced filtering of vulnerable taxa has probably occurred elsewhere. This may provide an additional explanation for the apparent lack of extinctions following extensive habitat modification of Europe and North America (Balmford 1996).

Table 24 indicates that, to a certain degree, there was a prehistoric filtering of species before the advent of colonialism. On islands of the Pacific ocean, the proportion of recent

bird species that have become extinct or are endangered has decreased as time since colonisation increased (Pimm *et al.* 1994). The islands of the western Pacific, those occupied first by humans, have had fewer recent extinctions and have fewer currently endangered species, suggesting that species sensitive to human occupation became extinct, leaving only the more resilient species. The impact of humans appears superficially greatest in the most recently occupied areas, the implication being that places that have been occupied by humans for a long time have already lost most of their human-sensitive species.

Extinction debt

If species in a community are linked through a food web or mutualistic relationships, the extinction of one may lead to the extinction of another (Gilbert 1980). Heywood *et al.* (1994) argue that predicted extinction rates are higher than those observed because of the time lag that exists before species that are "committed to extinction" are lost. Culotta (1994) and Tilman *et al.* (1994) predict that habitat destruction causes an "extinction debt" whereby extinction occurs generations after habitat fragmentation. This represents a future ecological cost as a result of current habitat destruction.

Magsalay *et al.* (1995) support this notion from work done on Cebu Island where only 0.3% of the original dipterocarp forest remains. They consider both Cebu Island's endemic bird species (as well as five endemic sub-species) to be "committed to extinction". In Puerto Rico, less than one percent of the original forest remains but to date, no bird species has become extinct (Brash 1987). Brash (*op. cit.*) states that extinction lag (debt) is possibly a factor contributing to the depressed avian extinction rate in Puerto Rico.

Avian extinctions over the last 47 years

There have been 12 avian extinctions in the last 47 years (Table 25). This is the lowest extinction rate in the last 200 years. Of these extinctions, eight occurred on islands and three on continents. One species' range spanned both island and mainland. Habitat destruction and introduced predators were the most important causes of extinction accounting for six and five extinctions respectively.

The islands affected in the past 47 years were New Zealand (2), Hawaii (2), Fiji (1), Seychelles (1), Guam (1), and Pohnpei (1). For half these islands, these were the first avian extinctions (Fiji, Guam and Pohnpei). The most recent extinction is the Ivory-billed Woodpecker in 1991, which had a range spanning Cuba and the southeastern USA. The Seychelles has experienced the most recent island extinction (1986), followed by Guam (1985), Fiji (1973) and New Zealand (1965). Five of the eight island extinctions were caused by introduced predators.

Table 25. The chronology and cause of avian extinctions since 1950. (HD - habitat destruction, Ex - exploitation, IP - introduced predators, M - mainland, I - island, B - island and mainland.)

Species	Cause	Habitat	Date	Source
Glaucous Macaw	HD	M	1955	Mountfort (1988)
Piopio*	IP	I	1955	Fuller (1987)
Pohnpei Mountain Starling*	?	I	1956	Mountfort (1988)
Akiola*	HD/O	I	1960	Collar *et al.* (1994)
Kakawihie*	HD/O	I	1963	Collar *et al.* (1994)
Bush Wren*	IP	I	1965	Collar *et al.* (1994)
Barred-wing Rail	IP	I	1973	Collar *et al.* (1994)
Colombian Grebe	HD	M	1977	Collar *et al.* (1994)
Guam Flycatcher*	IP	I	1985	Collar *et al.* (1994)
Aldabra Warbler*	IP	I	1986	Collar *et al.* (1994)
Atitlan Grebe	HD	M	1987	Collar *et al.* (1994)
Ivory-billed Woodpecker	HD,Ex	B	1991	Collar *et al.* (1994)

(* indicates passerine species)

The three mainland extinctions occurred in countries of Central and South America, the most recent being in Guatemala (Atitlan Grebe *Podilymbus gigas*). The habitat of the

Glaucous Macaw was spread over four countries. Habitat destruction was the cause of all mainland extinctions in this time frame.

Seven extinctions were of passerines and five of non-passerines. All the passerine extinctions occurred on islands and all the mainland extinctions were non-passerine. Introduced predators were the main cause of extinction of the passerine species affected (four out of seven) and habitat destruction was responsible for all the non-passerines extinctions except one, the Barred-winged Rail *Nesoclopeus poeciloptera* of Fiji. This is the only island-dwelling non-passerine that has become extinct recently.

Body size

The mass range of extinct species in this analysis was between 3g and an estimated 500 kg with a median of 334 g. However, species with body masses less than 200 g accounted for 73 (60%) of the 126 extinct species whose mass could be inferred. This suggests that small birds are particularly at risk. However, Gaston and Blackburn (1994) report that most bird species are small-bodied, with a median mass of 37,6 g.

Only one bird weighing over 2 000 g has become extinct in the last 150 years. This is probably because large, vulnerable birds had already become extinct (before 1800). It is also thought that bigger birds will be more susceptible to extinction through habitat destruction as they need larger ranges to survive (Brown and Brown 1992). This is not reflected in the extinction record where, of causes known with certainty, the majority of larger bird extinctions were as a result of exploitation for food. Although habitat destruction is thought to have played a role in the moa, emu and Elephant Bird extinctions, its isolated effect cannot be evaluated. The effect of ongoing habitat loss and fragmentation on larger species should become evident in the next 20 years or less (Simberloff 1984, Pimm 1995).

The extinction of smaller species became more frequent post-1800, this again being coincident with the European colonial expansion and its associated extinction pressures (p. 49). All the extinction causes affected these species. Several studies concur with the hypothesis that for a given population size, small bodied species are more vulnerable than larger-bodied species (Peters and Realson 1984, Belovsky 1987, Pimm *et al.* 1988, Soulé e*t al.* 1988, Gotelli and Graves 1990, Tracey and George 1992): this may be particularly true when population size is small (Pimm *et al.* 1988). However, even although more small-bodied species have become extinct than large-bodied ones, this may simply be because there are proportionally more small bird species than large ones (Gaston and Blackburn 1994).

Chapter Three: Threatened avifauna.

Part 1 - Results

Collar *et al.* (1994) identify 1111 bird species that are globally threatened. Of these, 482 species exclusively inhabit islands, 587 exclusively inhabit mainland regions and 42 inhabit both mainland and island habitats. Threatened species are placed into one of four categories: extinct in the wild, critically threatened, endangered or vulnerable. In this analysis, the four "extinct in the wild" species are grouped with those in the "critical" category, making 172 species that are critically threatened. Two hundred and thirty five species are endangered and 704 are vulnerable.

Causes of threat

All threatened species

The causes of threat as listed by Collar *et al.* (1994) have been categorized in the same way as the main causes of extinction: *viz.* habitat destruction, introduced vertebrates and exploitation. There are also "other" and "unknown" causes (Table 26). The category of introduced vertebrates differs from that of introduced predators as used in Chapter 2 for reasons discussed in the "methods" section (Part 2 of Chapter One).

Habitat destruction as a sole cause or in combination with other threat causes affects 760 species of bird. As the sole cause it affects almost half of all the threatened species in the world. Proportionally, many more mainland species (60%) than island species (37%) are threatened by habitat destruction. A combination of habitat destruction and exploitation threatens the next highest number of species, and together these two sources of threat affect almost two-thirds of the species listed by Collar *et al.* (1994).

Table 26. Distribution of threat types amongst bird species inhabiting islands and mainlands

Key:
H.D. Habitat destruction
Ex Exploitation
I.V. Introduced vertebrates

Numbers:

	Island		Mainland		Both		Total	
	(#)	(%)	(#)	(%)	(#)	(%)	(#)	(%)
HD	180	37	351	60	9	21	540	48
Ex	14	3	7	1	11	26	32	3
IV	49	10	8	1	0	0	57	6
HD/Ex	74	15	89	15	9	21	172	15
HD/IV	31	6	14	2	3	7	48	4
IV/Ex	5	1	0	0	3	7	8	1
Other	69	14	49	8	6	14	124	11
Unknown	60	12	69	12	1	2	130	12
Total	482		587		42		1111	

Habitat destruction and exploitation in conjunction threaten 172 species of which 89 are mainland species. These two factors affect 15% of threatened mainland species and 21% of the threatened species whose ranges include both mainland and islands. Species found in both mainland regions and on islands are affected most by exploitation (26%). Habitat destruction alone affects 21% of these species.

"Other" causes threaten 124 species. These vary from drowning on tuna longlines (Wandering Albatross *Diomedea exulans*) to genetic swamping and fire (Black-eared Miner *Manorina melanotis*). Of the remaining known threat factors, introduced vertebrates threaten 6% of threatened species, habitat destruction and introduced vertebrates 4%, exploitation 3% and introduced vertebrates and exploitation 1%. Unknown causes threaten 130 species; 60 of these species live exclusively on islands and 69 exclusively in mainland regions and one species inhabits both.

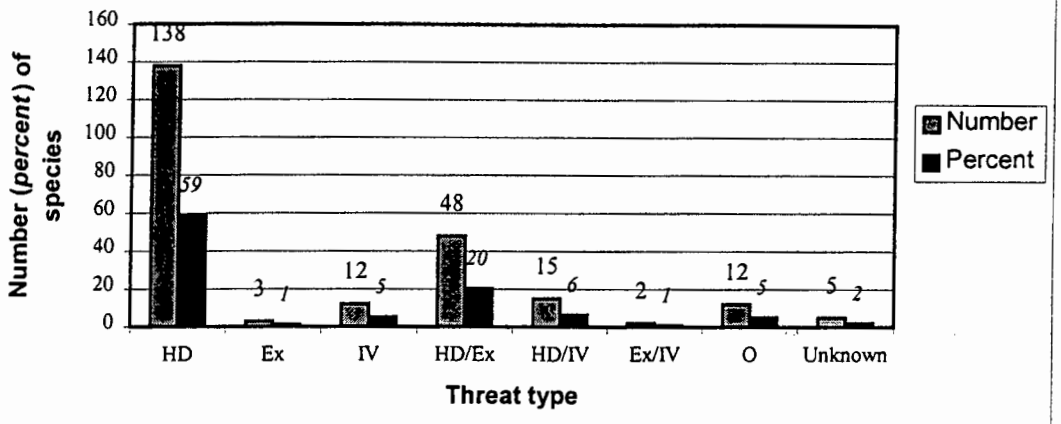
Endangered species

A detailed analysis of the 403 endangered and critically threatened species was carried out. In 271 cases, the major threat factor (habitat destruction, introduced vertebrates, exploitation, other or unknown) appeared together with one or both of two other threats listed by Collar *et al.* (1994) *viz.* natural causes (exacerbated by other causes) and small ranges or populations. One hundred and eighteen of the 235 endangered species and 153 of the 168 critical species were affected in this way. Excluding those affected by natural causes, 233 species are affected: 96 endangered species and 137 critically threatened species. Balmford and Long (1994) showed that of all threatened bird species, nearly 80% have breeding ranges less than 50 000 km^2 in extent.

Only the main threat factors are discussed below but cognizance needs to be taken in considering the proportion of species that are also affected by natural causes and/or have small ranges or populations.

Habitat destruction alone affects 138 (59%) endangered species (Fig. 6); habitat destruction and exploitation combined affect a further 48 species (20%). These two threat types account for 79% of threat to endangered birds. Habitat destruction coupled with introduced vertebrates affects 15 species. Habitat destruction is therefore implicated in the poor conservation status of 86% of all endangered species. Introduced vertebrates alone, and causes classified as "other" each threaten 12 species. There are five species for which the threat is unknown.

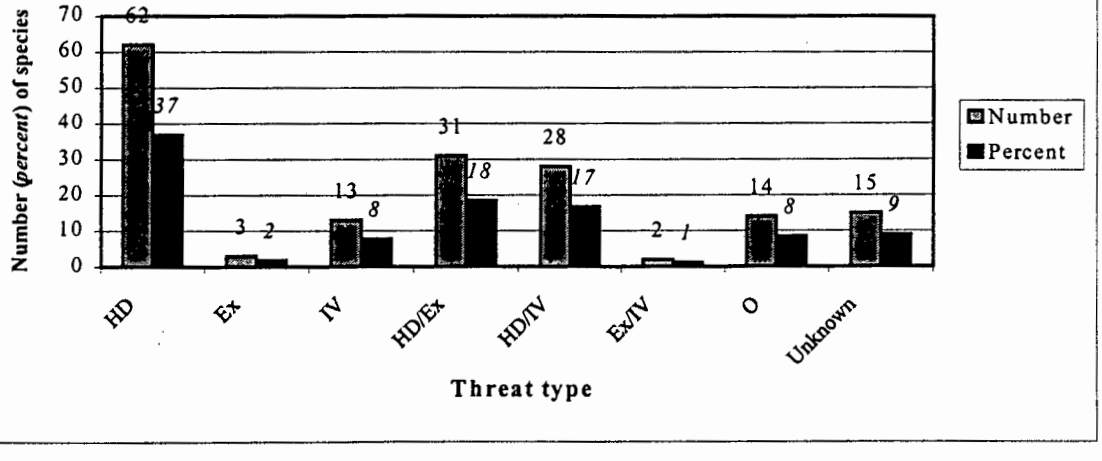
Figure 6. The nature of threat to endangered species



Critical species

Sixty-two critical species (37%) are threatened primarily or exclusively by habitat destruction (Fig. 7). Combinations of habitat destruction and exploitation, and habitat destruction and introduced vertebrates are the next major sources of threat, affecting 31 (18%) and 28 (17%) species respectively. Thus, habitat destruction contributes to the critical status of 72% of critically threatened species worldwide. Fourteen species are threatened by the "other" causes mentioned earlier. Introduced vertebrates affect 13 species. Eighty-two percent of critical species have small ranges and/or populations. The threats to 15 species (9%) are unknown.

Figure 7. The nature of threat to critically threatened species



Geography of threat

All threatened species

Figures 8a+b compare the numbers and percentages of extinct and threatened species as a function of their distribution (mainland, island or both). Forty-nine percent of critically threatened species are found exclusively in mainland habitats. Forty-eight percent occur on islands only, and 2% inhabit both. In each threat category there are more species threatened in mainland habitats than on islands with the exception of critical species.

A summary of threat in the 25 most affected countries is presented by Collar *et al.* (1994). Asian countries contain the most threatened species (600) followed by South American countries (376). Specifically, Indonesia and Brazil have the greatest number of threatened species, 104 and 103 respectively, followed by the Philippines and China, both with 86.

Figure 8a. Distribution of extinct and threatened bird species amongst islands and mainlands (number)

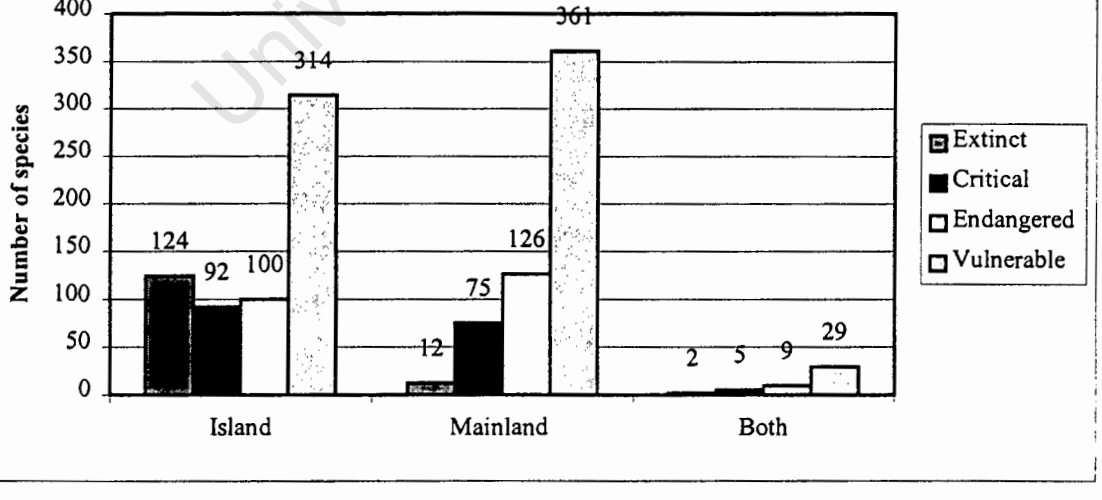
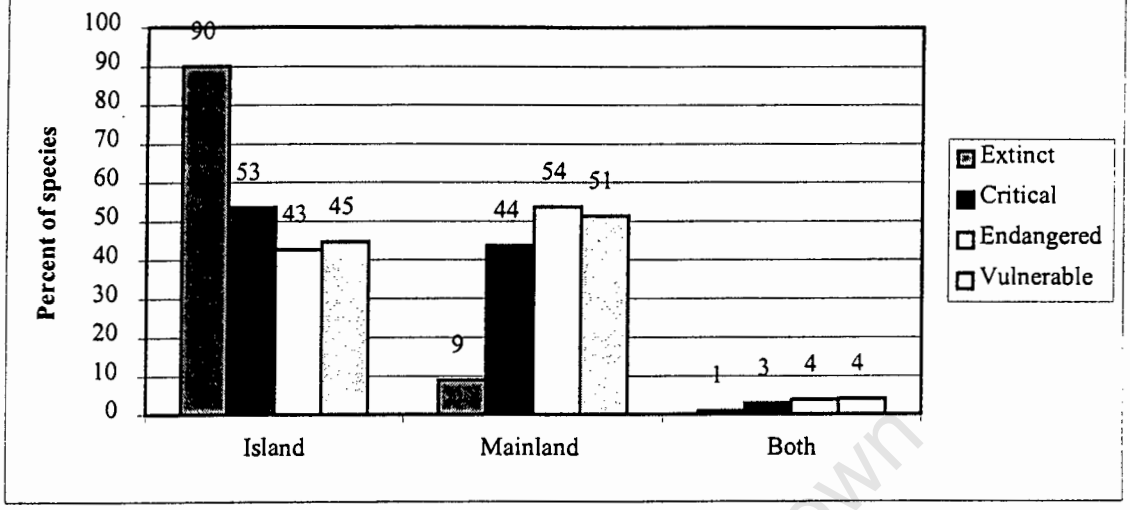


Figure 8b. Distribution of extinct and threatened bird species amongst islands and mainlands (percent)



Of endangered and critically threatened species, 264 (64%) occur on the mainland and 146 on islands (Table 27). South America has 159 species and Asia 145. (A larger proportion of species are vulnerable in the Asian region (86%) than in South America (48%) - Collar *et al.* (1994)). Forty-seven endangered and critically threatened species occur in Brazil and 45 in the Philippines. Colombia follows with 31 species; Mexico and Indonesia each have 20 species in these threat categories.

Table 27. Geographical distribution of threat in the 25 countries with the largest number of threatened species (not divided into regions).

All categories (vulnerable, endangered and critical)		*Endangered and Critical species*		*Threatened endemics*		
	Number of threatened species	Country	Number of threatened species	Country	Number of threatened species	Percentage of threatened species that are endemic
Indonesia	104	Brazil	47	Philippines	40	89
Brazil	103	Philippines	45	Brazil	32	68
Philippines	86	Colombia	31	Colombia	24	77
China	86	USA	25	USA	17	68
India	71	Indonesia	20	Indonesia	12	60
Colombia	62	Mexico	20	New Zealand	12	92
Peru	60	Peru	18	Australia	11	92
Ecuador	50	Ecuador	16	Madagascar	10	100
USA	46	Argentina	16	Peru	9	50
New Zealand	45	Vietnam	16	Venezuela	7	64
Vietnam	45	China	13	Ecuador	6	38
Australia	44	India	13	Cuba	6	60
Thailand	44	New Zealand	13	Angola	5	83
Myanmar	43	Australia	12	Kenya	5	100
Argentina	40	Venezuela	11	Somalia	5	100
Russia	35	Thailand	11	Vietnam	5	31
Mexico	34	Japan	11	Ethiopia	4	100
Japan	31	Madagascar	10	India	4	31
Malaysia	31	Paraguay	10	Seychelles	4	100
Papau New Guinea	31	Cuba	10	New Caledonia	4	100
Tanzania	30	Solomon Islands	9	Micronesia	4	100
Bangladesh	28	French Polynesia	9	Comoros	4	100
Madagascar	28	Malaysia	8	Mexico	3	16
Bolivia	27	Myanmar	8			
Zaire	26	Bolivia	8			

Endangered species

Nine South American countries contain a total of 73 endangered species (Table 28, Fig. 9). These species are spread over most of South America except for the southern part of the continent. Brazil and Colombia are most affected with 19 and 17 species respectively. Forty-nine of the 79 species are endemic to one country. Twenty-three species are found in two countries and 10 species in three countries.

There are 70 endangered species in Asia, 15 of which are mainland species. The Philippines has the highest number of endangered species with 26, more than one third of the endangered species in the region. Indonesia has the next most endangered species (10).

Africa has 31 endangered species, the country with the most endangered species being Angola with 6. There are nine endangered species on "African" islands, five of which are on Madagascar. There are two regions where there are a disproportionally large number of endangered species, east central Africa and the western parts of southern Africa. This is seen in Figure 10, which shows the global density of endangered birds.

Central American countries and islands contain the next highest number of endangered species (26), 14 of these occurring in Mexico. Eleven species inhabit islands, six being found on Cuba.

Australia and New Zealand have 19 endangered species, ten in Australia, eight in New Zealand and one that is found in both countries. There are a further five species that are threatened on islands in the south Pacific around Australia and New Zealand. In this region there are more species endangered on islands than in mainland regions, Asia being the only other region where the bias is skewed toward island species.

Europe is the only continental region that has no globally endangered species.

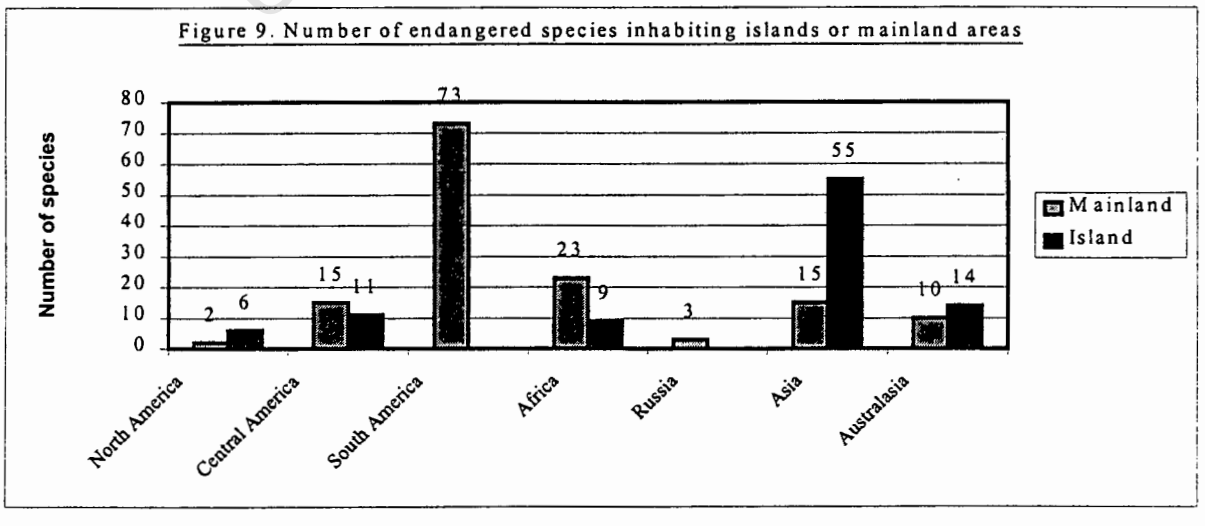
Table 28. Geographical distribution of endangered species

Region		Country	Number of endangered bird species	Totals
South America		Bolivia (BO)	3	73
Key: AR - Argentina		Brazil (BR)	19	
PY - Paraguay		Colombia (CO)	17	
CL - Chile		Ecuador (EC)	3	
		Peru (PE)	4	
		Venezuela (VE)	3	
		AR,BR,PY	9	
		AR,BR	1	
		BO,BR	1	
		BO,PE	2	
		CO,EC	2	
		CO,VE	2	
		EC,PE	5	
		PE,CL	1	
		CO,EC,VE	1	
Central America	Mainland	Mexico	14	26
		Guatemala	1	
	Islands	Bermuda	1	
		Cuba	6	
		Dominican Rep. and Haiti	1	
		Martinique	1	
		St. Lucia and Martinique	1	
		Puerto Rico	1	
North America		Canada	1	8
		U.S.A. (Mainland)	1	
		(Hawaii)	6	
Asia	Mainland	China	2	70
		Vietnam	2	
		India (and Bangladesh)	4	
		More than one country	7	
	Islands	French Polynesia	6	
		Indonesia	10	
		Japan	2	
		Micronesia	3	
		Philippines	26	
		Solomon Islands	1	
		Papua New Guinea and Solomon Islands	5	
		Sri Lanka	2	

Table 28 (cont.)

Russia		Russia	2	3
		Russia and China	1	
Africa	Mainland	Algeria	1	31
Key: CI - Ivory Coast		Angola	6	
GH - Ghana		Ethiopia (ET)	4	
ZA - South Africa		Kenya (KE)	1	
ZM - Zambia		Tanzania	1	
MW - Malawi		Somalia	4	
SD - Sudan		Zimbabwe (ZW)	1	
		CI,GH,GN	2	
		ET,ZA,ZM	1	
		MW,ZA,KE,SD	1	
	Islands	Cape Verde	1	
		Madagascar	5	
		Mauritius	1	
		Réunion	1	
		St. Helena	1	
Australia			10	10
Australia and N.Z			1	1
New Zealand and		New Zealand	8	13
surrounding islands		New Caledonia	3	
		Fiji	1	
		Togo	1	
			235	235

Figure 9. Number of endangered species inhabiting islands or mainland areas



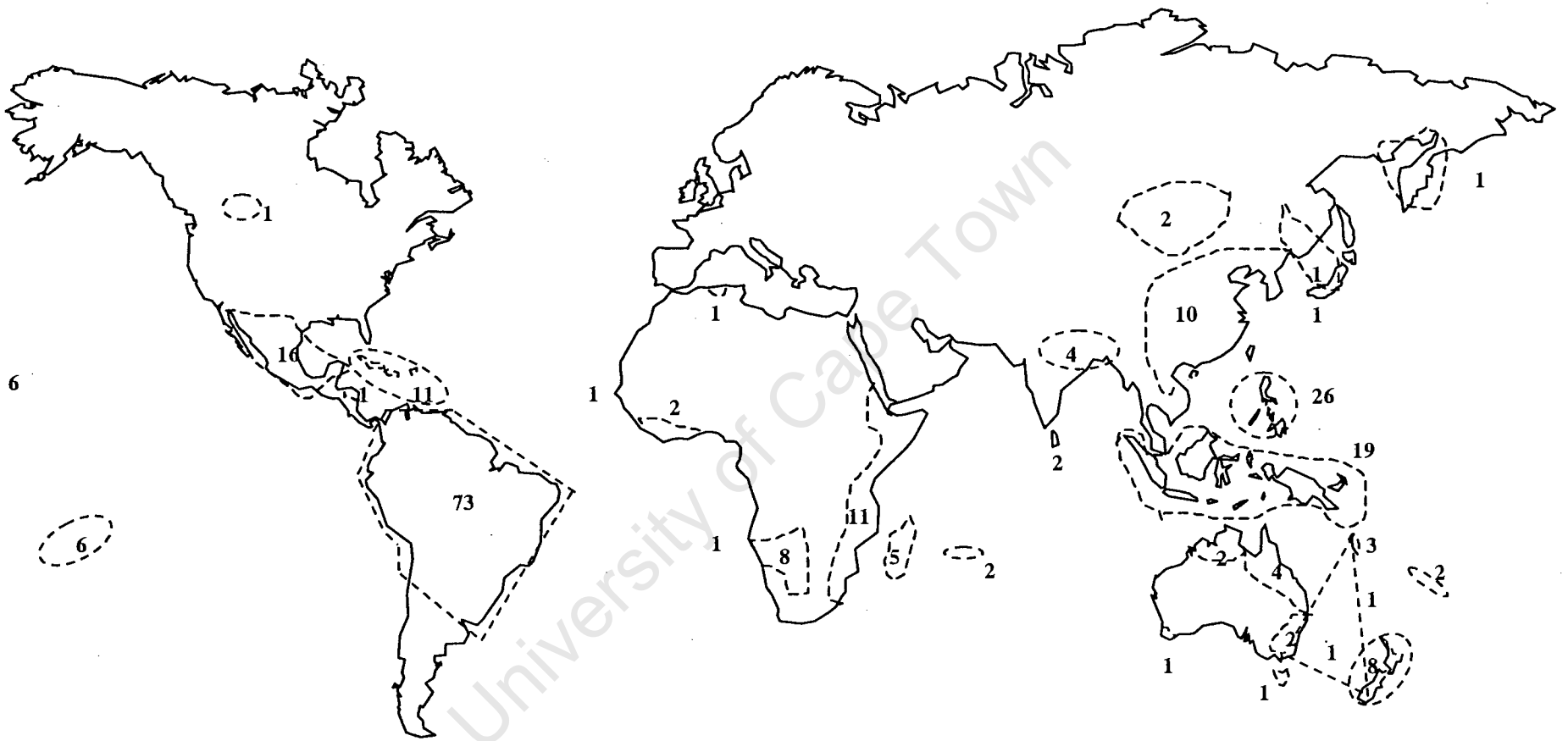


Figure 10. Distribution of endangered avifauna

Critically threatened species

South America has the highest number of critically threatened species with 42 (Table 29, Fig. 11). Asia and Africa are the next two most affected regions, with 41 and 37 critically threatened species respectively.

In South America, the 42 critical species are distributed in 11 countries and all are mainland species (Fig. 11). Brazil has 14 critical species, followed by Colombia with eight. Four species inhabit more than one country. There are 38 species endemic to eight respective countries.

Asia has 18 countries and islands that collectively hold 41 critical species. Mainland countries hold 14 species, of which China and Vietnam have four each. India and Nepal together share three critical species. Three species inhabit several countries; these are included as "other" in Table 31. Eight islands or island chains hold 27 critical species, 14 being found in the Philippines (Figure 12).

The 37 critically threatened African species are distributed amongst ten mainland countries and eight islands. Islands hold 68% of these species. There are 12 species that are critical in the ten mainland countries. Of the mainland countries, only Kenya has more than one species, with four. Some species' ranges extend over more than one country. The most affected region of mainland Africa is along the east coast where there are seven critical species. There are 25 critical species on eight islands/island groups. Madagascar and Mauritius each have five species and the Seychelles four.

Central American countries and islands have 15 critically threatened species. Mexico has the highest number with five followed by Jamaica with three. There are nine species that inhabit islands and six with mainland ranges.

Table 29. Geographical distribution of critically threatened species

Region		Country	Numbers	Totals
South America		Argentina	1	42
(Codes for South American countries are as in		Bolivia	1	
Table 28).		Brazil	14	
		Chile	1	
		Colombia	8	
		Ecuador	4	
		Paraguay	0	
		Peru	5	
		Venezuela	4	
		AR,BR,PY	2	
		AR,CL	1	
		CO,EC	1	
Central America	Mainland	Mexico	5	16
		Honduras	1	
	Islands	Cuba	2	
		Jamaica	3	
		St. Lucia	1	
		Puerto Rico	2	
		Trinidad and Tobago	1	
		Granada	1	
North America		Canada and U.S.A.	1	13
		U.S.A. (Mainland)	2	
		(Hawaii)	10	
Asia	Mainland	China	4	45
		Vietnam	4	
		Other	4	
		India	3	
	Islands	Guam and N'rn Marianas	4	
		Indonesia	2	
		Japan	2	
		Micronesia	1	
		Philippines	14	
		Solomon Islands	2	
		Papau New Guinea and Solomon Islands	2	
		French Polynesia	2	
Russia			1	1

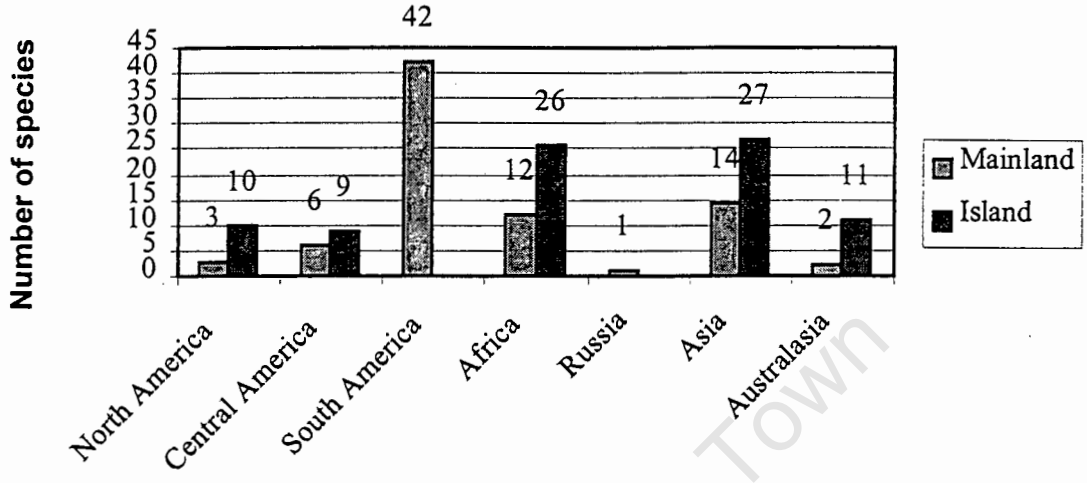
Table 29 (cont.)

Africa	Continent	Algeria	1	38
		Cameroon	1	
		Djibouti	1	
		Kenya	4	
		Liberia	1	
		Mozambique and Tanzania	1	
		Nigeria	1	
		Somalia	1	
		South Africa	1	
	Islands	Comoros	4	
		Madagascar	5	
		Mauritius	5	
		Mayotte	1	
		Réunion	2	
		Sao Tome and Principé	3	
		Seychelles	4	
		St. Helena	1	
		Madeira	1	
		Amsterdam Island	1	
Australia			2	2
New Zealand and surrounding islands		New Zealand	4	11
		Fiji	2	
		Norfolk Island	2	
		Cook Island	1	
		Western Samoa	2	
			168	168

Extinct in the wild

NE Brazil	(Alagoas Curassow)	1
Guam	(Guam Rail)	1
Revillagigedo Is. (Mexico)	(Socorro Dove)	1
New Zealand	(Kakapo)	1
		4

Figure 11. The number of critically threatened species inhabiting islands or mainland areas



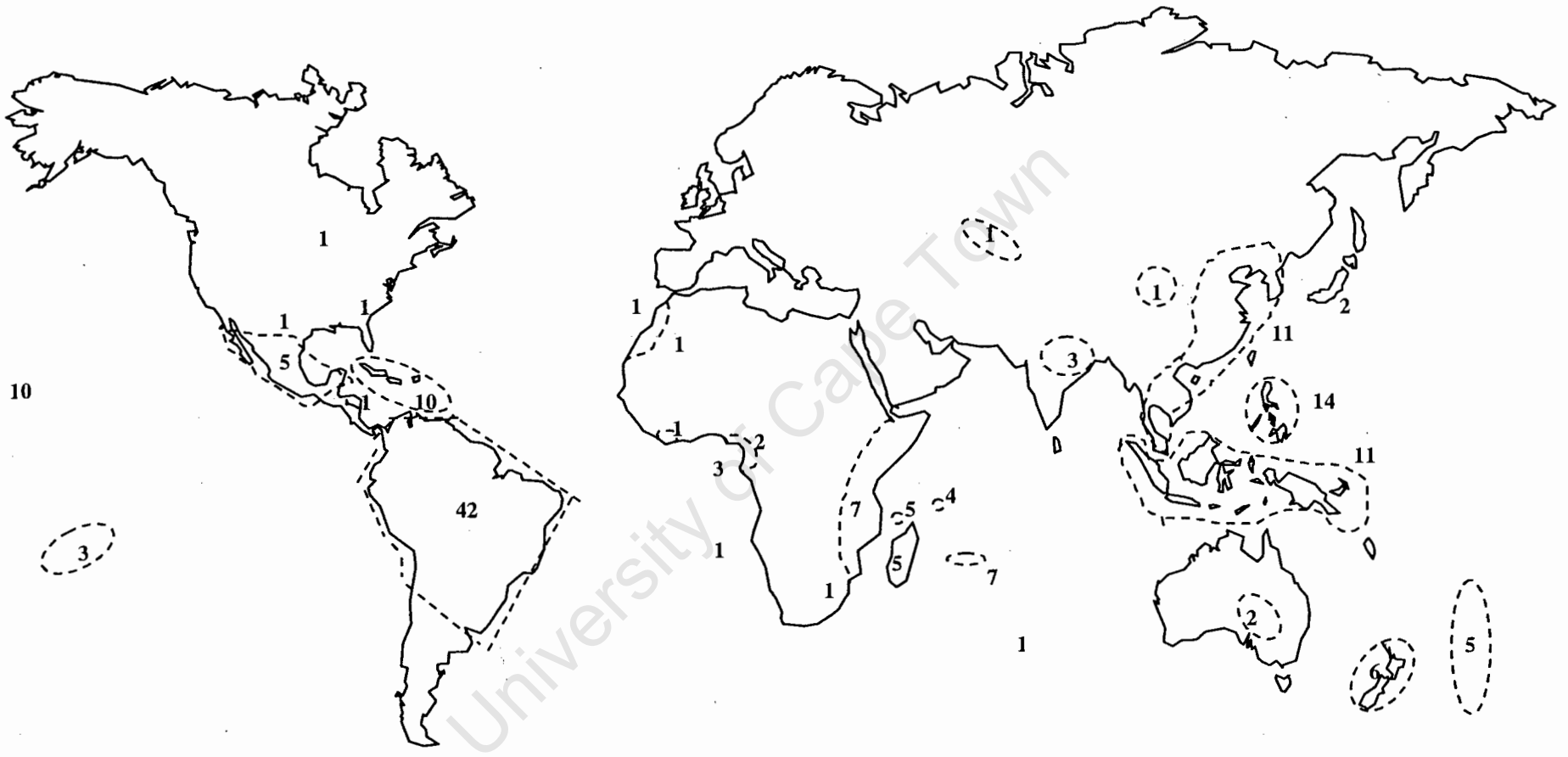


Figure 12. Global distribution of critically threatened avifauna

North American countries have 13 critical species: one species inhabits both Canada and the USA, the remainder being restricted to the USA. The North American continent, however, contains only three critical species as the remaining ten occur on the Hawaiian islands.

In the Australian region, there are 11 species critically threatened on islands and two on the Australian mainland. New Zealand and the immediate area around it, including Norfolk Island, contains six critically threatened bird species.

Russia has one critically threatened species, the Slender-billed Curlew *Numenius tenuirostris*.

Table 29 also lists the names of those birds classified as "extinct in the wild" and the country in which they are found. Three islands and one mainland country are affected.

Taxonomy

Monroe and Sibley (1993) and Collar *et al.* (1994) do not follow identical classifications. Adopting a particular classification influences measures of degrees of threat at the family level. For threatened species I have adopted Collar *et al.*'s (1994) classification and indicate where these classifications differ at the family level (Table 32). For numbers of extant species in families I follow Monroe and Sibley (1993). Where Monroe and Sibley (1993) and Collar *et al.* (1994) differ on the family/sub-family level this is indicated in Table 30 and is explained.

All threatened species

One hundred and forty five avian families hold the approximately 9700 bird species in the world (Monroe and Sibley 1993). The sizes of these families range from 1 species (Struthionidae) to 824 species (Emberizidae). Collar *et al.* (1994) list 102 families and 14 sub-families that contain threatened species. Numbers of threatened species within

families range from a single species (e.g. Hydrobatidae and Sulidae) to the Psittacidae where 88 (24%) of the 349 species are threatened.

A correlation between family size and the number of threatened species in them, using all the extant families, including those which did not have threatened species in them, indicated no relationship between family size and the number of threatened species in it. ($r_{204} = -0.06$).

Table 30 lists families in which 20% or more of species are threatened. Three hundred and sixty three species are contained in these families. Five families have all of their species threatened; all of these are families containing between one and three species. The Drepanididae, a larger family, has almost 80% of its species threatened. This is followed by the (smaller families) Casuariidae, Picarthartidae, Callaeidae and Orthonychidae, each with 50% of the family threatened. These families have only two or four extant species in them.

Among families with threatened taxa, 16 (40%) contain having fewer than ten species: these include 26 threatened species. Eight of the 39 families in Table 30 are relatively large, having more than 50 extant species. These eight families together account for 257 of the threatened species, almost one quarter of the global total.

Table 30. Status of families which have over 20% of their species threatened

Family	Number of species threatened	Number of extant species	Percent threatened	Percent extinct
Casuariidae	2	4	50	0
Apterygidae	3	3	100	0
Spheniscidae	5	17	29	0
Diomedeidae	3	14	21	0
Procellariidae	23	79	29	1
Pelecanoididae	1	4	25	0
Pelecanidae	2	9	22	0
Phalacrocoracidae	8	36	22	2
Fregatidae	2	5	40	0
Ciconiidae	5	26	20	4
Threskiornithidae	7	33	21	5
Phoenicopteridae	2	5	40	0
Cracidae	15	50	30	0
Phasianidae	48	175	27	1
Megapodiidae	8	19	42	0
Mesitornithidae	3	3	100	0
Turnicidae	5	16	31	0
Rallidae	32	132	24	10
Heliornithidae	1	4	25	0
Pedionomidae	1	1	100	0
Gruidae	7	15	47	0
Rhynochetidae	1	1	100	0
Psittacidae	88	349	25	5
Tytonidae	5	17	29	6
Coraciidae	4	12	33	0
Capitonidae	3	14	21	0
Pittidae	7	31	23	0
Philepittidae	1	4	25	0
Cotingidae†	15	69	22	0
Atrichornithidae†	2	2	100	0
Picathartidae	2	4	50	0
Zosteropidae	21	93	22	2
Drepanididae†	16	21	76	33
Callaeidae	1	2	50	33
Orthonychidae	1	2	50	0
Laniidae	1	30	35	0
Cinclidae	1	5	20	0
Totals	363	1332		

† Monroe and Sibley (1993) classify these below the family level whereas Clements (1991) and Collar *et al.* (1994) list them as families. Column three uses figures for sub-families or tribes as listed by Monroe and Sibley (1993) that best reflect the grouping used by Collar *et al.* (1994).

Endangered and critical species

Eighty-three families contain one or more endangered or critically threatened species. Of these, 25 families have five or more endangered and critical species in them (Table 31). One hundred and fourteen of the 168 critical species (68%) and 155 of the 235 endangered species (66%) are contained in these families. Thus, approximately one-third of all families with endangered and critical species in them hold 67% of the total endangered and critical species complement.

Table 31. Status of families with five or more endangered and critical species

Family	Critical	Endangered	Number of extant species	Percent endangered and critical species
Procellariidae	9	4	78	16
Ciconiidae	5	1	26	23
Anatidae	4	2	129	4
Accipitridae	3	6	251	4
Cracidae	5	3	50	16
Phasianidae	8	6	175	8
Rallidae	6	10	132	12
Columbidae	13	9	310	7
Psittacidae	10	26	349	10
Strigidae	4	4	155	5
Trochilidae	8	7	322	4
Furnariidae†	3	4	279	3
Formicariidae	2	8	244	4
Tyrannidae†		6	539	1
Alaudidae	1	4	91	5
Turdidae†	6	6	176	6
Timaliidae†	1	5	236	2
Muscicapidae†	1	6	117	6
Monarchidae†	4	6	138	10
Zosteropidae	7	1	93	8
Emberizidae*	4	14	612	3
Drepanididae†	4	6	21	48
Icteridae†	1	6	97	7
Fringillidae†	1	4	170	3
Parulidae†	4	1	116	4
Totals	114	155	4906	

† These taxa are listed at a sub-family level by Monroe and Sibley (1993) but at the family level by Collar *et al.* (1994) and Clements (1991).

* Monroe and Sibley (1993) include in this family what Clements (1991) and Collar *et al.* (1994) consider families (Emberizidae, Icteridae and Parulidae) and list 824 species. This table follows the latter's classification.

The Psittacidae have the highest number of species in these categories (36) followed by the Columbidae (22) and the Emberizidae (18). These families contain a relatively large number of species; 360, 313 and 612 respectively. Families with the highest proportion of endangered and critical species are the Drepanididae (48%), Ciconiidae (23%) and Cracidae (16%). These families contain fewer taxa: 21, 26 and 50 species respectively.

There is a negative correlation between the size of a family and the proportion of endangered or critical species within it ($r_{25} = -0.36$, $p < 0.05$). Families that are smaller tend to face a higher degree of threat.

Endemicity

There are 81 endemic species in six South American countries, 61 in four Asian countries, 23 in Australasia and 19 in Africa (Collar *et al.* 1994). Of the 86 endangered and critical species endemic to islands, 40 are endemic to the Philippines and 12 each to Indonesia and New Zealand.

The country with the greatest number of endangered and critical endemic species is the Philippines with 40, accounting for two-thirds of the endangered endemics in the Asian region. The next two most affected countries are Brazil (32) and Colombia (24).

Seven countries have only endemic birds that are endangered or critical, the number of species affected being either four or five. Of these countries four are islands. Ninety-two percent of New Zealand's and Australia's endangered and critical species are endemics. In the Philippines this figure stands at 89% and in Brazil and Colombia it is 68% and 77% respectively.

Habitat of threatened birds

Avian species that live in forests are under greater threat than species that live in other habitats. Over half of the threatened birds of the world (632 species, 56.9%) live exclusively in forests. When considering birds that inhabit forests as well as some other habitat, 74.6% of all threatened birds are affected (709 species) (Collar *et al.* 1994).

Comparing the habitat requirements of vulnerable, endangered and critically threatened species shows that the same percentage of birds that are vulnerable and endangered inhabit forests (55.7%). Almost 80% of endangered species live in forests or both forests and some other habitat. Of the critically threatened species 63.4% inhabit forests only and over three quarters inhabit forest or both forest and some other habitat.

Of the other habitats that hold a higher proportion of the remaining threatened birds, scrub, wetlands and grasslands are most important. Scrub holds 9.3% of threatened species, wetlands 8.8% and grassland 6.3%.

Body size, endemicity, threat and extinction on ten selected islands

Ten islands of various sizes accounting for a range in the diversity of endemic avifauna were selected to test whether a relationship existed between body size, endemicity, threat and extinction. This excluded island groups and archipelagos but did include individual islands found within these. Dunning (1993) does not list body masses for all the endemics on these islands so only endemics for which a body mass was available or could be reasonably inferred were used.

Within the selected subset of islands, Madagascar and Jamaica hold the most diverse endemic avifaunas and are also the two largest islands, although Jamaica is only marginally larger than the island of Hawaii (which has fewer endemics - Table 32).

Molokai has no endemics. No other island has more than ten endemics and, of these, no particular sized island has suffered a disproportionately large number of endemic extinctions.

Table 32. Body mass of endemic species on ten selected islands

Island	Island size (km^2)	Number of endemics	Body mass (g)					Total
			< 50	50 - 100	100 - 300	300 - 700	> 700	
Lord Howe	17	2	1			1		2
Rodrigues	104	2	2					2
Molokai	676	0						0
Chatham	960	6	2		2		1	5
Tahiti	1042	2	1			1		2
Mauritius	1865	7	4		2	1		7
Réunion	2510	6	2	2	1	1		6
Hawaii	10464	5	3			1		4
Jamaica	10991	25	13	2	5	2	1	23
Madagascar	594180	104	38	6	22	7	6	79
Total			66	10	32	14	7	130

Most endemics for which there was information on body size had masses of <50 g (51%) or between 100-300 g (26%). Body masses of critical and endangered endemics on the ten islands are found in Table 33. The island with the most critical and endangered species is Madagascar (9), followed by Mauritius (5) and the island of Hawaii (3). Two islands have no critical or endangered species, and three islands one such species.

Overall, twenty percent of the endemics on these islands are critical or endangered. Although the largest fall within the weight ranges <50 g and 100-300 g, the largest proportion of critical and endangered species have body masses >700 g (63%). Four of these birds are on Madagascar and one on Chatham Island.

Table 33. Critical and endangered endemics on ten selected islands

The "%" in the Total column indicates the percentage of all endemic avifauna on the island that are critical or endangered (for which body masses were available).

Island	Island size (km^2)	Primary threat cause	Body size (g)					Total	
			< 50	50 - 100	100 - 300	300 - 700	> 700	#	%
Lord Howe	17	IP				1		1	50
Rodrigues	104	HD	1					1	50
Molokai	676	?						0	
Chatham	960	IP	1		1		1	3	60
Tahiti	1042	?						0	0
Mauritius	1865	HD	2		2	1		5	71
Réunion	2510	HD,Ex		1	1			2	33
Hawaii	10464	HD,O	2			1		3	75
Jamaica	10991	HD,Ex,IP			2			2	8
Madagascar	594180	HD	3		2		4	9	11
Total			9	1	8	3	5	26	20
Percent under threat			16	9	26	23	63	20	

Habitat destruction features as the primary threat on six islands affecting 22 endemics. Introduced predators feature on three islands and affect six species; exploitation on two islands, in combination with other factors, affects four species. Combinations of primary threats occur on only three islands, these being two large islands (Jamaica and Hawaii) and one smaller island (Réunion).

Three of the islands have experienced ten or more extinctions - Rodrigues, Mauritius and Hawaii (Table 34), but there is no correlation between the number of extinct species and island size. The other islands, with the exception of Réunion, have experienced four or less extinctions. Madagascar, Mauritius and Hawaii have the most critical and endangered species (Table 34). Hawaii and Mauritius are islands that have experienced a large number of extinctions and also have a high proportion of their endemic avifauna endangered or critically threatened.

Table 34. Numbers of extinct, extant endemic, threatened and resident bird species on selected islands

Island	Island size (km^2)	Number of extant endemic species	Extinct species		Number of extant and extinct endemics	Critical and endangered endemics		Total number of resident species	Human population
			Cause	Number		Cause	Number		
Lord Howe	17	2	Ex,IP	3	5	IP	1	27	371
Rodrigues	104	2	Ex	10	12	HD	1	14	36115
Molokai	676	0	HD	2	2		0	37	6587
Chatham	960	6	HD,IP	4	10	IP	3	16	760
Tahiti	1042	2	IV	4	6		0	21	131309
Mauritius	1865	7	Ex	11	18	HD	5	25	1116923
Réunion	2510	6	Ex	9	15	HD,Ex	2	26	652857
Hawaii	10464	5	HD,O	12	17	HD,O	4	62	120317
Jamaica	10991	25	?	2	27	All 3	3		2555064
Madagascar	594180	105	HD,Ex	2	107	HD,Ex	9	201	13427758
Totals		140		59	219		28	429	

In analyses that excluded Madagascar (which is an order of magnitude larger and has an order of magnitude more endemics than any other island in Table 34), there are significant correlations between island size and the number of extinct and extant endemic species ($r=0.86$, $p<0.05$) and between island size and the number of resident species ($r=0.89$, $p<0.05$). These correlations are perhaps intuitive, as one would expect larger islands to have more endemics and more residents. There is also a statistically significant correlation between the proportion of extinct and critical and endangered endemic birds (of all extant and extinct endemics since 1600) and human population density ($r=0.77$, $p<0.05$). This lends support to the idea that anthropogenic effects may be the cause of many more extinctions (Diamond 1989, Milberg and Tyrberg 1993, Simberloff 1984, 1986a).

Extinction and primary threat causes have changed over time on six of the islands in Table 34. On two islands there has been a complete switch between extinction and threat cause, and on four islands a threat cause has been added or removed (however this may only be an artifact of changed perception of threat cause based on improved scientific observation). Two islands have no critical or endangered endemic birds. On Hawaii and Madagascar the historical extinction and current threat causes affecting endemic species are the same.

Small islands are characterized by single threat causes, and larger islands by multiple threat causes. Extinction was caused on the smaller islands by both multiple and single factors and on larger islands by multiple factors. For critical and endangered endemics, habitat destruction threatens 19 species, exploitation four and introduced predators four. A swing from exploitation as the primary extinction factor to habitat destruction as the primary threat factor on these islands is evident.

Considering bird body size, 30 and three extinct species fell into the size ranges <50 g and 100-300 g respectively (27% and 3%). Nineteen extinct species fell into the 50-100 g range (17%) and 11 into the 300-700 g range (10%) with 12 (11%) being >700 g. The highest proportion of extinct species were placed in the <50 g size range, different to critical and endangered species that had the highest proportion in the >700 g range. In terms of numbers of endemic species, however, both had a maximum in the <50 g range.

The ten islands were placed into size categories of <1 000 km^2, 1 000-10 000 km^2 and >10 000 km^2 and bird body sizes of the endemic species into mass categories of <100 g and >100 g (Table 35). This was done for extinct, extant, critical and endangered avifauna for which masses were available or could be inferred.

Table 35. Numbers and proportions of extinct, extant and critical and endangered endemic species on the ten selected islands in relation to their body masses. Proportions are of numbers in the column headings.

	Extant and extinct species (192 *spp.*)				Extinct species (56 *spp.*)				Critical and endangered species (26 *spp.*)			
Body mass (g)	< 100		> 100		< 100		> 100		< 100		> 100	
Island size (km^2)	#	%	#	%	#	%	#	%	#	%	#	%
< 1 000	19	10	15	8	7	13	11	19	2	7	3	12
1 000 - 10 000	13	7	25	13	4	7	19	34	3	12	4	15
> 10 000	73	38	47	24	11	20	4	7	5	19	9	35
Totals	105	55	87	45	22	40	34	60	10	38	16	62

The largest proportion of critical and endangered endemic bird species are those with a body mass >100 g found on islands whose area is >10 000 km^2. The largest proportions of extinct birds had body mass in the same range and were found on islands with a size range of 1 000 - 10 000 km^2. The largest proportions of extinct and

extant endemics in both size ranges was on islands >10 000 km^2; this result is due largely to the higher number of endemics found on Madagascar. On Hawaii and Madagascar (islands of >10 000 km^2 which support endemic avian species in both mass ranges - Table 33), the proportion of critical and endangered endemics is lower by almost half the proportion of species that has become extinct since 1600.

The number of critical and endangered endemic species in Table 35 is very much less than the number of species that have become extinct since 1600. There are two exceptions: endemic birds on islands with areas between 1 000 and 10 000 km^2 whose mass is <100 g, and endemic birds on islands > 10 000 km^2 with body masses of > 100 g. In the former category, although numbers are similar, the proportion of endemic species which are critical and endangered is almost double that of species that have become extinct. In the latter category, the number of critical and endangered endemic species affected is double that of extinct avifauna. The proportion of critical and endangered endemic bird species is five times that of avifauna that have become extinct on these islands since 1600.

In terms of extinct and extant species, the three islands in the size range >10 000 km^2 had more small birds become extinct since 1600 than are currently threatened: of birds <100 g, 11% became extinct whereas currently 4% are critical or endangered. There is, however, a higher proportion of large birds currently threatened on these islands than became extinct since 1600: 9% of birds >100 g are critical or endangered whereas 3% of birds in this range have become extinct since 1600. Perhaps this is an indication of the effect of habitat destruction (a threat on all three islands) on larger species, which need larger habitat ranges to survive.

On islands of <10 000 km^2, the lower proportions of critical and endangered species compared with those of islands of area > 10 000km^2 (Table 36) are as a result of the large proportion of extinct species making up the total extinct/extant endemic avifauna compliment (41 of 72 species - 57%).

The proportion of extinct and extant endemic bird species on these ten islands that are critical and endangered is generally much lower than the proportions of birds that have become extinct (Table 36). Extinct species (in both mass categories) made up 30% of 192 species that formed the historical species compliment and critical and endangered species 12%. The largest proportions of the historical endemic species compliment to become extinct were birds with body masses of >100 g (18%), primarily from islands whose size was <10 000 km^2. Relatively few threatened birds fall in these categories.

Table 36. Proportions of the total historical endemic avifauna (of the ten islands) that have become extinct or are classified as critical and endangered.

Body mass (g) / Island size (km^2)	Extinct species		Critical and endangered species	
	< 100 g	> 100 g	< 100 g	> 100 g
< 1 000	4	6	1	1
1 000-10 000	2	10	1	2
> 10 000	6	2	2	5
Totals	12	18	4	8

The majority of critical and endangered species have masses >100 g, and inhabit islands >10 000 km^2: more than twice as many species in this category are threatened or have already become extinct. This suggests, that on these islands, where extinct species form a very low proportion of all birds inhabiting them since 1600, larger species are more at risk of extinction today. Islands that have experienced a comparatively high proportion of extinction of birds of a certain size have a low proportion of critical or endangered species of that same size category. However, considering all islands, the proportion of large birds at risk of extinction is approximately double the proportion of small birds, despite the fact that proportionally more large birds are already extinct. This is perhaps the result of a new extinction pressure being applied, that of habitat destruction i.e. those birds which survived the early threats of exploitation and predators may be unable to survive the more recent threat of habitat loss.

Part 2 - Discussion

Causes of threat

Habitat destruction

The most important factor affecting currently threatened avifauna is habitat destruction. This threat is not unique to birds and impacts most other taxa (Smith *et al.* 1993b). Of the threatened birds, almost two-thirds (65%) live all or part of their lives in forest (Collar *et al.* 1994 - Fig. 5). Other habitats that have endangered or critical species inhabiting them include scrub, wetlands and savannah and grasslands. Between them, these habitats support the majority of the remaining threatened species (Collar *et al.* 1994).

In addition to forest-dwelling birds, approximately two-thirds of the world's land and fresh water animal species are found in tropical forests (Raven 1988, Stevens 1995b). Overall annual losses of open and closed forests averaged 15.4 million hectares during 1981-1990, or 0.8% per annum, with 40% of their original area already lost (Wilson 1988, Myers 1992, Grainger 1993). This rate appears to be accelerating (Sayer and Whitmore 1991, Whitmore and Sayer 1992, Brooks *et al.* 1997). Balmford and Long (1994) show a positive association between the rate at which tropical forests are being cleared and their biological importance. On average, countries with large numbers of range-restricted forest endemics are losing their forests faster than countries with lower levels of endemism. The reasons underlying this relationship are unclear (Balmford and Long 1994), but it should be noted that these countries are tropical, mostly third-world and therefore poor. Logging plays a vital role in foreign exchange earnings for these countries, which are needed to meet their debts. The economies of these countries are placed before their ecologies, with potentially disastrous effects on endemic (as well as other) species.

1. Predation, competition and introduced disease

Introduced vertebrates affect 6% of threatened bird species and all of these are island species. Although this is a small percentage of the total number of threatened species, extinction risk seems to be particularly high for these species: five of the nine most recent extinctions were as a result of introduced predators. Savidge (1987) documents the extinction of the Guam Flycatcher as a result of the introduction of the Brown Tree Snake *Boiga irregularis* and Pimm *et al.* (1995) allude to the disastrous impact the introduction of this snake might have on Hawaiian avifauna. Of the four species that are classified "extinct in the wild", two (the Guam Rail and Socorro Dove) were driven to this state by introduced vertebrates and for a third (the Kakapo), this has become the primary threat (Collar *et al.* 1994). The original habitats of these three species are islands.

2. Hybridization

Another threat stemming from introduced vertebrates is that of hybridization. In New Zealand, hybrids between the endemic Grey Duck *Hymenolaimus malachorynchus* and the introduced Mallard *Anas platyrhynchos* are common throughout both the main islands and on Chatham Island (Rhymer *et al.* 1994). In some areas, hybrids greatly outnumber "pure" Grey Ducks and there is strong reason to think that only a hybrid form will remain (Rhymer *et al.* 1994). In the Hawaiian islands, where the Mallard breeds with the endangered Hawaiian Duck *Anas wyvilliana*, hybridization appears to be rampant on Hawaii and Oahu (Simberloff 1994). Owen *et al.* (1986) expressed concern that the North American Ruddy Duck *Oxyura jamaicensis*, feral in Britain, would, as it spread to continental Europe hybridize with the rare White-headed Duck *O. leucocephala* of Spain. This has indeed happened in southern Spain and the offspring are viable (del Hoyo *et al.* 1992, Urdiales and Pereira 1993).

Inbreeding

Another potential factor that may play a role in the extinction proneness of island avifauna is that of inbreeding depression. Frankham (1998) showed that island populations were significantly inbred, with breeding co-efficients significantly higher in endemic than non-endemic island populations. Threatened island avifauna may therefore be more difficult to conserve than threatened mainland species. Habitat destruction is likely to increase the effect of inbreeding as small, isolated populations will become inbred over time.

Endangered and critical species

Habitat destruction is the main threat to species in these two categories, affecting 86% of all endangered species and 72% of critical species. Over half the species in this list are found in South America and Asia, and it is in these regions and for this reason that greatest concern is expressed over the next mass extinction (Balmford and Long 1996, Brooks *et al.* 1997).

Geography of threat

There are more threatened species in mainland areas than on islands. However, the proportion of species under threat on islands is greater than those on the mainland. Approximately 23% of all birds that inhabit islands are under threat (calculated from Monroe and Sibley 1993). Of species that inhabit mainland areas, less than 10% are under threat. The global average of birds under threat, as listed by Collar *et al.* (1994), is 12 %. In terms of avian biodiversity, islands therefore have proportionally a lot more to lose than mainland regions (and have already lost proportionally considerably more). Island species face threat primarily from habitat destruction and introduced vertebrates.

Hot Spots

Myers (1988) identified ten tropical areas that (a) are characterised by exceptional concentrations of species with high levels of endemism and (b) are experiencing unusually rapid rates of habitat depletion. These "hotspots" comprise less than 3.5% of remaining primary forests but harbour over 34 000 endemic plant species and 700 000 endemic animal species. Should these areas lose 90% of their forest cover, 7% of the Earth's plant species and a similar proportion of animal species would become extinct. Myers (1988) estimated that in the next 25 years, the extinction rate in these ten hotspot areas could be as much as 20 000 times the background extinction rate.

The ten "hotspots" are Madagascar, the Atlantic coast of Brazil, western Ecuador, the Colombian Choco, the uplands of western Amazonia, the eastern Himalayas, Peninsular Malaysia, northern Borneo, the Philippines and New Caledonia. Hawaii and Queensland are also identified as hotspots, but here conservation resources are much more plentiful than in the developing world (in which the ten other hotspots are found), so extinction threats can (at least in theory) be readily reduced.

Geography of endangered and critical species

South America currently holds 73 endangered and 42 critical species, the highest number for any region in this analysis. This has resulted primarily from forest loss in the region. Although there are so many species in these two categories, there have been only three avian extinctions here in recent history. The most recent extinction was in 1977 as a result of habitat destruction (Colombian Grebe *Podiceps andinus* - Table 26). The causes of the other two losses (the Tumaco Seedeater *Sporophila insulata* and the Glaucous Macaw *Anodorynchus glaucus*) were also habitat destruction, these being in 1912 and 1955. Taking into account the effects of a time lag between deforestation and extinction (Heywood *et al.* 1994), many of the endangered and critical species in this region are likely to be in imminent (and perhaps irreversible) danger of extinction.

There are more endangered and critical species in mainland regions than on islands. This is in contrast to the extinction trend, where island extinctions have out numbered mainland ones. This pattern is largely a result of the large number of endangered species on the South American mainland. Of critical species world-wide, however, just under half are found on islands (83 of 168 species). In geographical areas which incorporate both mainland and island areas, islands support the greatest numbers of critical species (Table 37).

Table 37. The number of critical species found on islands and the mainland in regions where islands are present.

Region	Number of species on islands	Number of species on the mainland
Asia	27	14
Africa	26	12
North and Central America (including Hawaii)	19	10

The fate of Hawaii's endemic avifauna is sobering testimony to man's impact on biodiversity. Should the ten critically threatened birds become extinct within the next ten years, this will raise the total number of extinctions on these islands since the arrival of the Polynesians to 111, leaving only 25 of the estimated 136 original species (Pimm 1995) extant by the year 2008. In historical times, the islands will have experienced 27 extinctions, at an extinction rate of 496 species per million species per year, a rate 500 times the background extinction rate.

Mainland Africa has not experienced any avian extinctions since 1600 but currently holds 22 endangered species and 12 critical species. On African islands there are 9 endangered and 26 critical species. The islands with threatened taxa have generally more than one critical species on them, only three having a single species. Four of the nine islands holding critically threatened species have experienced extinctions in recent history (Madagascar, Mauritius, Réunion and the Seychelles) and these currently hold 16 of the 25 critical species. The primary causes of threat on these islands are habitat destruction

and introduced vertebrates. All but one of the extinctions on these islands occurred before this century, the exception being the recent extinction of the Aldabra Warbler *Nesillas aldabrana* in 1986 as a result of introduced vertebrates from the Seychelles. On the Mascarene Islands, there are fewer species currently threatened than have become extinct historically, suggesting that the species most prone to extinction have already been lost. However, seven of the 12 threatened species are critically threatened. This may indicate an imminent effect of a new extinction filter on these islands as the last extinction was in 1876, the new filter being habitat destruction and introduced vertebrates. Historically, exploitation has been the major cause of bird extinctions in the Mascarenes. Two species in Madagascar are on the brink of extinction, if not already extinct (O. L. Langrand, pers. comm.). These are the Madagascar Pochard *Aythya innotata* and Alaotra Grebe *Tachybaptus rufolavatus*.

Endangered and critical endemic species in the 25 most affected countries

The greatest numbers of endemic species in the endangered and critical categories are found in central and South America (81). It is also here where some of the most severe deforestation is taking place (Sisk *et al.* 1994). Brooks and Balmford (1996) predict that 88 species will be lost from the South American Atlantic forests over some (unspecified) time lag. As this figure includes birds from one small region only, South America as a whole may well be facing a major extinction event.

The Philippines and Indonesia hold the highest number of endangered and critical endemics in the Asian region. Birds in both countries are under threat primarily from habitat destruction. Dinnerstein and Wikramanayake (1993) identify the Philippines as one of the areas with the lowest percentage of protected forest in the Indo-Pacific region, and, if current deforestation rates continue, very little indigenous forest will remain in ten years. Indonesia is ranked as the region with the highest overall level of endemism (all species, including birds) in the world (Sisk *et al.* 1994). Brooks *et al.* (1997) showed that deforestation affects species with small ranges most severely and that these ranges

generally overlap to form "hotspots" (ICBP 1992). Deforestation is often concentrated in these hotspots (Balmford and Long 1996).

The number of species listed as threatened in insular south-east Asia by Collar *et al.* (1994) is very similar to the number of bird species that Brooks *et al.* (1997) predict will become extinct in this region using the species-area curve. They separated island endemics into single-island endemics and intra-archipelago endemics and found that single-island endemics are more at risk than the more widespread species. Small populations of single-island endemics are at greatest risk of extinction here (Pimm *et al.* 1993).

In the Afrotropics, Madagascar has the highest number of endangered and critical avian endemics. Habitat destruction is a pervasive threat to all endemics here with eight of the ten threatened endemics having small ranges or populations. Considering all animal species, Madagascar is ranked 5th in endemic species richness by Sisk *et al.* (1994). The last proven avian extinction here (Snail Eating Coua *Coua delalandei*), some time between 1920 and 1930, was a result of habitat destruction and exploitation. Madagascar is considered by Myers (1988) to be a "hotspot" for extinction. There have been no documented mainland bird extinctions in Africa in recent history although several species have not been seen for many years. Today, however, there are five mainland countries that contain 19 endangered and critical avian endemics. Kenya has four critical species and Somalia one. Sisk *et al.* (1994) list Kenya and Angola as areas of critical global concern and rank the Ivory Coast as the country in the world with the highest forest-loss index.

Of the 17 "North American" endangered and critical endemics, 16 are on the Hawaiian islands. The threats faced by the Hawaiian birds are habitat destruction and introduced vertebrates, the same threats that caused most of the extinctions on these islands (Olson and James 1984). All the species listed as critical have small ranges or populations. Myers (1988) considers Hawaii a "hot spot", but adds that because conservation resources

are more plentiful here (compared to developing countries), extinction threats can be reduced.

New Zealand has the same number of endangered and critical endemics as Indonesia, only the Philippines having more species in these categories. The New Zealand birds are threatened by habitat destruction and introduced vertebrates and all but three have small ranges or populations. These are the same factors that resulted in the post-moa extinctions, the two most recent of which, in 1955 (the Piopio *Turnagra capensis*) and 1965 (Bush Wren *Xenicus lyalli*), were caused by introduced vertebrates.

Taxonomy

Family size

When considering the three threat categories of vulnerable, endangered and critical, family size cannot be used as a good predictor of risk. Although families with the highest number of threatened species tend to be large, not all large families have a high proportion of threatened taxa.

Families with all their species under threat

The five families with 100% of their species threatened include 10 species that are endemic to a certain region or island group. New Zealand and Madagascar hold three species each, the other four species being found in south-western Australia (3) and New Caledonia. The Australasian species are all classified as vulnerable with the exception of the Kagu *Rhynochetos jubatus*, which is endangered on New Caledonia. Introduced predators, especially dogs, are the main threat to this species. Introduced predators also threaten the three New Zealand species and affect one Madagascan species, whereas habitat destruction affects the Australian and remaining Madagascan species.

Endangered and critical species

The families that hold the largest number of endangered and critical species are all relatively large. The Psittacidae have 36 of these species, the Columbidae 22 and the Emberizidae 18. The number of extant species in these families are 349, 313 and 612 respectively (Monroe and Sibley 1993). However, not all the large families have a large number of endangered or critical species; the Furnariidae have seven of 279 species endangered or critical and the Muscicapidae, seven of 255 species.

Body size

Blackburn and Gaston (1994) documented the frequency distribution of bird body masses based on data for two-thirds of extant species. Bird body masses are highly skewed to the left, even on a logarithmically transformed body-mass axis, meaning that most bird species are small-bodied. Although bird masses range from 2 g to 80 kg, the median mass is 37.6 g.

Gaston and Blackburn (1995) used data from Collar and Andrew (1988) to show that threatened birds are, on average, larger-bodied than non-threatened species. Size differences between island endemics and species with a continental distribution do not account for this difference. Within taxa there is still a relationship between body size and extinction threat. They also show that the degree of threat faced by threatened species may be related to body size and that there is a genuine tendency for large-bodied birds to be more at risk from extinction than small-bodies species.

It is likely that large-bodied birds have larger home ranges and hence spatial requirements than small-bodied species (Gaston and Blackburn 1995), resulting in an inverse relation between body size and species density. Thus, as habitat area decreases, large birds will become rarer than small birds at a much faster rate. Although it seems possible that body

size may be used as an indicator of the degree of threat amongst threatened taxa, there is not as yet an understanding of the mechanisms by which body size and extinction risk interact.

Island biogeography theory and extinction rates

The number of species present in an area is a function of its size. Arrhenius (1921) proposed this to be a power function. The derivation of the power function from first principles by Preston (1962) has led to the form $S = cA^z$ where S = species, A = area, and c and z are constants (Simberloff 1992). This function is reasonably consistent across different well known taxa in different areas (Rosenzweig 1995).

Rosenzweig (1995) summarised the work of Williams (1943) on z-values into four patterns, of which three are mentioned here:

1. Nested subsets of habitat - In nested areas with continuous forest $z < 0.25$, typically ranging from 0.12 - 0.18 (Johnson *et al.* 1968).
2. Real islands - For islands within an archipelago $z \sim 0.25$ (Preston 1962), typically ranging from 0.25 - 0.35 (Johnson *et al.* 1968), but decreasing for particularly isolated archipelagos (Diamond and Mayr 1976).
3. Tiny fragments - In small, isolated forest patches $z \sim 0.6$ - 1. These contain few individuals of each species so z-values will be high (Blake and Karr 1984, Pimm and Askins 1995).

The value of z is traditionally expected to be approximately 0.25 (Preston 1962). This value is used by, amongst others, Brooks and Balmford (1996), Brooks *et al.* (1997) and Pimm and Askins (1995). In effect this relationship predicts that if 90% of a particular habitat is lost, 50% of the species that live in that habitat will become extinct with time.

Pimm and Askins (1995) show that this relationship is true for the endemic species of the forests of eastern North America. These endemics are the species most at risk through the clearing of forest and, at times, local extinction rates exceed the species-area relationship predictions. Brookes and Balmford (1996) show that in forests in the South American Atlantic region, where nearly 90% of the rainforest has been cleared, more endemics restricted to a single Endemic Bird Area (*sensu* Brown and Brown 1992, Stattersfield *et al.* 1998) are threatened with extinction than those found more widely. They predict the number of avian extinctions in the region, through forest loss, will reach 88 and that these will become extinct after some unspecified time lag. This is equivalent to two-thirds of the global extinctions over the last 400 years in one relatively small region. Brooks *et al.* (1997) have shown the number of bird species in south-east Asia predicted to become extinct using the species-area relationship is very similar to the number currently listed as threatened by Collar *et al.* (1994). It should be noted, however, that Boechlen and Simberloff (1986) warned that the species-area model, as well as their faunal collapse and relaxation model, though useful, are not very good indicators of extinction and that care should be taken when working with them. The results from these should not be absolutized and blindly applied to all situations.

Endemicity, body size, threat and extinction on ten selected islands

Madagascar has, by a factor of ten, the greatest number of endemic bird species of islands considered in the analysis. Madagascar is also the only "hotspot" (*sensu* Meyers 1988) in this particular analysis and has the highest number of critical and endangered species. Habitat destruction is the main threat to critical and endangered species here. In addition to this, the endemic Alaoltra Grebe may have been driven to extinction through genetic swamping by the Little Grebe *Tachybaptus ruficollis*, which first colonised Madagascar in the 1930's (Langrand 1990). Birds of all sizes are threatened, no species of a certain size being more vulnerable.

Jamaica has 25 endemic bird species, but only two of these are critical or endangered. Jamaica is of similar size to Hawaii but has many more endemics. This ratio is perhaps an artefact of past extinction rates: since 1600, Hawaii has experienced 12 extinctions and Jamaica only two. The causes of extinction and threat to birds on Jamaica and Hawaii include habitat destruction but each site also has unique threats. Avian malaria still threatens the Hawaiian avifauna and introduced vertebrates and exploitation are impacting the Jamaican endemics.

The islands of Hawaii and Mauritius have the highest proportion of endemic avifauna in the endangered or critical categories - 75% and 71% respectively (three and five species). The major factor threatening the Mauritian species is habitat destruction in all instances. This is different to the primary extinction cause (exploitation), indicating perhaps that another set of extinctions is imminent, this time however through a different extinction factor.

The extinction and primary threat causes affecting endemic species on six of the ten islands considered have changed (two islands do not have critical or endangered endemics and on Hawaii and Madagascar the causes have remained the same). On two islands there has been a complete change between extinction and threat causes and on the other four a threat cause has been added or lost. The absence of a current threat that had been rated as an extinction cause probably indicates that all the endemic avifauna on the island prone to that specific factor have been lost. The addition of new threat factors may indicate either improved observation techniques in identifying threat or that the endemic avifauna on these islands face new extinction pressures. In the case of the latter, and where threat factors are new, it may be that further extinctions are imminent.

On these islands, birds with body sizes of >50 g and between 100-300 g are most threatened. Only 3% of extinct species fall in the size range 100-300 g; more extinct, critical and endangered species fall in the <50 g category than any other. This is not unexpected, as the median bird body size is 37.6 g for all species. Small birds may be

particularly susceptible to extinction as a result of introduced predators. The effect of habitat alteration on small birds is less than on larger species as the former need smaller ranges in which to live; these species may be able to survive even extreme habitat loss. The greatest threat to smaller birds could be the combined effects of habitat alteration and introduced predators. On islands which have supported birds of <50 g, introduction of predators was the most frequent sole cause of extinction of these birds (n=8) and, in combination with habitat alteration, led to the extinction of a further two species. As habitat patches become smaller, the greater will be the effects of predators, again highlighting the effect of combinations of threat pressures.

The high proportion of larger species under threat, especially on Madagascar and Mauritius, is reason for concern as all these are affected by habitat alteration, and larger birds require large ranges. Although there is no significant correlation between body size, extinction and threat among the endemic species on the selected islands, I suggest that a greater number of relatively large birds will become extinct in the next two decades than smaller birds, failing any conservation action. This is largely due to the extinction debt that is being built up by habitat alteration and its more severe impact on larger-bodied species. This is probably also true for species on the mainland that are critical and endangered and whose habitat is being fragmented.

Chapter Four: Summary and conclusions.

Prehistoric extinction, historical extinction and current threat

Extinctions

There have been 138 avian extinctions since 1600 (Table 38) and between 500-2 000 prehistoric ones (Milberg and Tyrberg 1993). At least 41 families experienced prehistoric extinctions and 45 historical extinctions. Fourteen families that experienced prehistoric extinctions have not lost additional species since 1600; 20 families that have experienced recent extinctions are not represented in the prehistoric extinction record.

In most families that experienced both prehistoric and historic extinctions, there were more than twice as many prehistoric extinctions as historical ones. This is expected as the time spanned in Milberg and Tyrberg's (1993) analysis is almost four times that considered in this analysis. The Rallidae (mostly flightless forms) had the highest number of prehistoric extinctions and the second highest number of historical extinctions. Of families that experienced prehistoric extinctions, only the Psittacidae have experienced more historical extinctions than prehistoric ones. They also account for the greatest absolute number of historical extinctions (20).

Three families have lost all their species in the last ±1400 years. There are at present possibly ten families in which all the species are listed as threatened (the uncertainty arises as a result of different classifications used by Clements (1991), Monroe and Sibley (1993) and Collar *et al.* (1994)). These families typically have between one and three species in them. Family-level extinctions are thus set to increase by perhaps three times the historical rate within the next 100 years. Intuitively, families with a smaller number of species face a greater risk of family-level extinction than those with a larger number of species. These small families are phylogenetically more unique and their loss, though small in numbers of species, represents a large evolutionary loss in terms of biodiversity. These species should thus be accorded a high conservation status because their phylogenetic uniqueness.

Table 38. Summary of extinct (post-1600), threatened and non-threatened extant bird species.

- I - Island, M - Mainland, B - Both
- The first row of figures indicates the number of species in each category; the bottom row expresses them in values as percentages
- Extant figures from Monroe and Sibley (1993)

Number of extinct species			Number of extant species				Number of critical species			Number of endangered species			Number of vulnerable species			Total number of threatened species				Percentage of all species threatened			
I	M	B	I	M	B	Total	I	M	B	I	M	B	I	M	B	I	M	B	Total	I	M	B	Total
124	12	2	2328	6113	1261	9702	83	85	4	85	141	9	314	361	29	482	587	42	1111				
90	9	1	24	63	13		48	49	2	36	60	4	45	51	4	43	53	4		21	9	4	12

Within the families listed by Milberg and Tyrberg (1993) that experienced prehistoric extinctions but have not experienced historical extinctions, 29 were non-passerine and 12 were passerine. The Accipitridae (13), Corvidae (7) and Megapodiidae (5) together account for more than half of these. Among families that lack evidence of prehistoric extinctions but have experienced historical ones, 11 were non-passerine and nine passerine. These 20 families have experienced 49 extinctions, the Sturnidae (7), Ardeidae (4) and Raphidae (4) having experienced more than other families. Recent extinctions in families "new" to extinction have generally affected non-passerines and passerines equally. This contrasts with families that experienced prehistoric extinctions but have not experienced historical ones: within these families non-passerines experienced more than twice as many extinctions as passerines. This may simply be because bones of (generally larger) non-passerines are more likely to be preserved than those of the smaller passerine species in the fossil/sub-fossil record. However, if Gaston and Blackburn's (1995) predictions about body size and extinction are correct (larger birds are more likely to become extinct than smaller birds), coupled with the fact that large birds are more likely to be impacted by exploitation than small birds, then the pattern may well be real.

Extinction and threat

Collar *et al.* (1994) consider 12% of all avifauna to be threatened. Only three families that have experienced prehistoric and historical extinction, and have currently threatened species, have fewer than 12% of their extant species threatened. In the 25 families that have experienced prehistoric and historical extinctions, an average of 25% of the remaining species are threatened.

One-third of all the currently threatened species are found in 14 families that have experienced both prehistoric and historical extinctions. Table 39 presents a comparison, using some of the more severely impacted families, between prehistoric extinction, historical extinction and current threat. The Drepanididae have been particularly heavily impacted in both extinction periods and also have a number of species that are currently threatened. The long-term survival of most species in this

family is doubtful if the pressures currently being applied through habitat destruction are not alleviated through conservation action. Other families that feature prominently in all three time periods are the Rallidae and Columbidae which, respectively, have experienced 49 and 21 extinctions and have 25% and 18% of the remaining species currently threatened.

Table 39. Comparison, using selected families, between prehistoric extinction, historical extinction and current threat.

Family	Prehistoric extinctions	Historical extinctions (#)	(%)	Species threatened (#)	(%)	% extinct and threatened since 1600
Aepyornithidae	7	1	(100)			100
Dinornithidae	13	10	(100)			100
Procellariidae	5	1	(1)	27	(35)	35
Anatidae	25	5	(3)	25	(17)	19
Acciptridae	13	0	(0)	24	(8)	8
Megapodiidae	5	0	(0)	8	(44)	44
Rallidae	34	15	(11)	32	(25)	34
Scolopacidae	5	2	(2)	10	(11)	13
Columbidae	13	8	(3)	55	(18)	20
Psittacidae	5	20	(5)	88	(24)	28
Tytonidae	8	2	(11)	5	(29)	37
Strigidae	14	3	(4)	20	(27)	30
Drepanididae	23	11	(35)	16	(80)	87
Corvidae	7			13	(11)	11
Sturnidae		7	(6)	7	(7)	13
Ardeidae		4	(6)	7	(11)	16
Raphidae		4	(100)			100
Turdidae		3	(2)	32	(18)	19
Total	177	99	(71)			

The Megapodiidae experienced five prehistoric extinctions and no historical extinctions, but almost half the remaining species are threatened. This may indicate the beginning of a new extinction event for this family. It is possible that extinction filters may have removed a number of "weaker" species before the arrival of Europeans, the remaining species being able to adapt to pressures introduced by the Europeans. Today, however, threats faced by the megapodes include egg harvesting, introduced predators and declining ranges as a result of human development (Collar *et al.* 1994). Although the first two threats may not be new, they may be exacerbated by the emergence of development and subsequent range restriction as a new threat. This

combination of threats may act as a new filter through which the family will pass, with the consequent loss of some species. This trend, where there were a large number of prehistoric extinctions, comparatively few historical extinctions, but a high current threat rating, is evident to varying degrees in several families in Table 39, including the Procellariidae, Anatidae, Rallidae, Tytonidae, Strigidae and Drepanididae.

Islands of the Pacific Ocean have been similarly affected by extinction in prehistoric and historical times (Tables 8, 25). Currently there are 74 endangered species and 51 critical species inhabiting these islands. This constitutes 77% and 57% of all island-dwelling endangered and critical species respectively. The Philippines and Indonesia hold the highest number of endangered and critical island-dwelling species but have experienced few historical extinctions (only one in Indonesia). There are only two island groups that have experienced a large number of extinctions but also have a relatively large number of endangered and critical species - New Zealand and Hawaii.

The Caribbean had more extinctions across more families in prehistoric times (26) than historical times (9). This region also has a relatively high number of endangered and critical species. The Mediterranean region has not experienced any historical extinctions although it experienced 12 prehistoric ones. There is only one endangered bird species in the region.

In the Indian Ocean there have been over three times more historical extinctions than prehistoric ones. Currently, there are nine endangered and 21 critical species in this region, of which ten inhabit Madagascar and nine the Mascarene Islands (see Figs 9 and 11). In the Mascarene Islands, there have been 33 historical extinctions (there is no mention of prehistoric extinctions by Milberg and Tyrberg (1993)), all of which occurred before 1900. This means there are fewer remaining endemic species on these islands (20 - Horne 1987, Staub 1976) than have already become extinct. Twelve of the remaining 20 endemics are threatened.

Regions at risk

The Philippines and Indonesia, and Central America and northern South America are regions that are likely to experience many extinctions in the near future. Both regions have a high level of endemism and are severely impacted by habitat loss. Importantly, in neither of these regions is there evidence that species have passed through any significant historical or prehistoric extinction filter.

Mainland Africa, which has not experienced any historical extinctions, is a region that may experience its first avian extinction within the next decade or two. Kenya and Angola are countries identified as areas of global concern (Sisk *et al.* 1994). African extinctions, however, will not be on the same scale as South American or insular Asian extinctions.

Families at risk

The number of species in a family is important in determining the vulnerability of the entire family to extinction. There are 44 extant families (33 non-passerine, 11 passerine) that contain five or less species (Monroe and Sibley 1993); 12 (27%) of these families have species under threat. Species in ten of these small families inhabit islands only and of these, four have threatened species. Madagascar holds four of the ten island families (one family with threatened species) and New Zealand three (two families with threatened species). Two of the New Zealand families and one from Madagascar are passerine, these being the only threatened, island-dwelling passerine families. Body masses of the New Zealand species range between 6 g and 2 500 g and on Madagascar between 34 g and 220 g. These species inhabit a range of environments from rainforest to scrub and subdesert.

The thirty-two families that do not include threatened species typically comprise taxa with a low level of regional endemism (only five families are endemic to a certain

region) that are not highly habitat specific. The body sizes of the birds in these families varies from large (Struthionidae) to small (Hypocoliidae).

Table 40 lists families that have the highest percentage of their species at risk of extinction and compares it with the number of extant species in the family. All but two of the families are small, holding five or less species.

Table 40. Families most at risk of extinction.

Family	Number of extinct species	Number of extant species	Percentage of species threatened	Endemic to one island group or country?	Principal threat habitat destruction?
Casuariidae	0	4	50	Y	N
Apterygidae	0	3	100	Y	N
Fregatidae	0	5	40	N	N
Phoenicopteridae	0	5	40	(S.Am.)	N
Megapodiidae	0	19	42	N	N
Mesitornithidae	0	3	100	Y	N
Pedionomidae	0	1	100	Y	Y
Rhynochetidae	0	1	100	Y	N
Rynchopidae†	0	3	33	N	N
Atrichornithidae†	0	2	100	Y	Y
Picathartidae	0	4	50	(Afr.)	Y
Drepanididae†	22	21	76	Y	N
Callaeidae	2	2	50	Y	N
Orthonychidae	0	2	50	(Australia)	Y

† These taxa are listed at a sub-family level by Monroe and Sibley (1993) but at the family level by Collar *et al.* (1994) and Clements (1991).

Habitat loss as the sole threat affects only four of the 14 families listed in Table 40. The only other sole cause of threat here is an introduced predator affecting the Rhynochetidae species. Combinations of causes threaten more species in these families than sole causes, confirming Bibby's (1994) idea that factors acting in combination with each other are likely to cause more extinctions than are exclusive factors.

In five families, the full species compliment is threatened. These families are small, containing between one and three species. They are all local endemics and are threatened by a variety of factors. The Apterygidae and Mesitornithidae are threatened by both habitat alteration and introduced predators whereas the Rhynochetidae species

is threatened by introduced predators. The remaining two families are threatened by habitat alteration.

The long-term future of the Drepanididae must be uncertain, having lost a third of its species since 1600 and having only four of the remaining 20 apparently free of threat. The main threat is a combination of habitat alteration and avian malaria. However, this family has been heavily affected by extinction historically and prehistorically, so the four non-threatened species may have a very good chance of long-term survival when seen in the context of extinction filters.

One other family (Megapodidae) has a relatively larger number of species threatened. Species in this family are threatened by a diversity of factors and especially combinations thereof. They are not endemic to any one area, being found in Australia and at a number of south Pacific islands.

Body sizes of species in the families included in Table 40 vary from large (Casuariidae, mean = 4 400 g) to small (Pedionomidae, mean = 43 g). The passerine species are generally smaller than the non-passerines with masses between 7 g (a drepanid species) and 250 g species in the Callaeidae family. In small families with threatened species, body size is not correlated with extinction likelihood.

Species at risk: a phylogenetic approach

All (403) species listed by Collar *et al.* (1994) as critical and endangered were used in an analysis which considered (1) the historical predisposition of a family to extinction, (2) the proportion of the family under threat and (3) the phylogenetic uniqueness of the family. A score of one to four was assigned to each critical and endangered species for each of the three above criteria. Determination of a score is shown in the key to Table 41. These three scores were summed to give a 'phylogenetic threat rating'. This was then compared with the conservation status of each species as defined by Collar *et al.* (1994).

Table 41 lists the 21 species with the highest ratings. Using a χ^2 test it was determined that the species listed in this table were a random subset of species from Collar *et al.* (1994). (Of the species with ratings of four and less (those not recorded in Table 41), 31 scored zero, 78 scored one, 77 scored two, 133 scored three and 62 scored four.) There are seven critical species and 14 endangered species that were given a rating of five or more. These species represent 11 families, the family with the most species being the Drepanididae (10). Only three of these families have experienced historical extinction.

The primary causes of threat to these 21 species are habitat alteration and introduced vertebrates: habitat alteration features in 16 (76%) cases and is the sole threat to two species; introduced vertebrates feature in 13 (62%) cases and are the sole threat to two species. According to Collar *et al.* (1994), habitat loss plays a role in the threat to 80% of all endangered and critical species and introduced vertebrates 20%. The proportion of species in Table 41 threatened by habitat loss (76%) is similar to the global average (80% - Collar *et al.* 1994). However, the proportion threatened by introduced predators (62%) is much higher than the global average (20%).

Seventeen species in Table 41 inhabit islands and four inhabit mainland regions. All except two are forest dwellers, the two exceptions inhabiting marine or coastal cliffs. Of the island-dwelling species, ten are found on Hawaii (the Drepanididae) and two on Madagascar.

Table 41. Analysis of species which have high conservation priority on the basis of the probability of family-level extinction as a function of past extinctions and present threats

Key:

Proportion of family under threat:
- 4 - above 40% of family under threat
- 3 - 25 - 40% of family under threat
- 2 -15 - 25% of family under threat
- 1 - 5 - 15% of family under threat
- 0 - 0 - 5% of family under threat

Historical predisposition of family to extinction:
- 4 - above 40% of family extinct
- 3 - 20 - 40% of family extinct
- 2 - 10 - 20% of family extinct
- 1 - 1 - 10% of family extinct
- 0 - 0% of family extinct

Phylogenetic uniqueness
- 4 - 1 species represents over 20 % of the family
- 3 - 1 species represents between 16-20% of the family
- 2 - 1 species represents between 11-15 % of the family
- 1 - 1 species represents between 6-10% of the family
- 0 - 1 species represents between 1-5% of the family

Habitat type: (from Collar *et al.* (1994))
- F - Forest
- S - Scrub
- R - Rocky areas, including cliffs
- M - Marine
- G - Grassland
- W - Wetlands

(Threat codes are as listed in the Introduction)

Species name	Proportion of family under threat	Historical predisposition to extinction within family	Phylogenetic uniqueness	Phylogenetic threat rating	BirdLife threat status	Habitat type	Threat codes
Rhynochetos jubatus	4	0	4	8	EN	FS	169
Phytotoma raimondii	4	0	4	8	CR	S	19
Psittirostra psittacea	4	3	1	8	CR	F	1689
Loxioides bailleui	4	3	1	8	EN	F	168
Hemignathus lucidus	4	3	1	8	CR	F	169
Hemignathus wilsoni	4	3	1	8	EN	F	1
Oreomystis bairdi	4	3	1	8	EN	F	1689
Oreomystis mana	4	3	1	8	EN	F	6
Paroreomyza maculata	4	3	1	8	CR	F	19
Loxops caeruleirostris	4	3	1	8	EN	F	1689
Loxops coccineus	4	3	1	8	EN	F	16
Melamprosops phaeosoma	4	3	1	8	CR	F	1689
Callaeas cinerea	4	0	4	8	EN	F	6
Fregata aquila	4	0	3	7	CR	RM	369
Pelecanoides garnotii	2	0	4	6	EN	RM	1246
Tyto soumagnei	3	2	1	6	EN	F	19
Neodrepanis hypoxanthus	2	0	4	6	EN	F	1
Gymnogyps californianus	1	2	2	5	CR	SGR	2589
Megapodius pritchardii	4	0	1	5	EN	F	12689
Grus leucogeranus	4	0	1	5	EN	W	129
Grus americana	4	0	1	5	EN	W	59

The historical/phylogenetic analysis presented here prompts some conclusions that differ from those of Collar *et al.* (1994). Firstly, not all the "top 21" species are listed by Collar *et al.* (1994) as critically threatened. Secondly, it gives much greater emphasis to the importance of introduced predators in threatening island bird species (and families) with extinction. The classification approach used by Collar *et al.* (1994) treats all species as equal; i.e. the same criteria are applied in the same way to all species. However, by ignoring history, and especially phylogeny, they are not able to include an element of "evolutionary uniqueness" in their status assessments.

However, this analysis also some short-comings. It fails to place some species which are on the verge of extinction or possibly already extinct such as the Writhed-billed Hornbill *Aceros waldeni* of the Philippines or Madagascar Pochard and Alaotra Grebe in the "top 21" listing. It also lists species which do not represent those most at risk of extinction (e.g. the Ascension Frigatebird *Fregata aquila* and Madagascar Red Owl *Tyto soumagnei*). In terms of ensuring family-level survival, it is perhaps also not realistic that four of the top five priorities should fall within one family.

Although the analysis presented here does not include all of the species included by Collar *et al.* (1994) as being in imminent danger of extinction, Collar *et al.*'s (*op. cit.*) approach does fail to incorporate an evolutionary element in species prioritization. The global loss of a major (family-level) evolutionary pathway potentially has a greater impact on future evolutionary potential than does the loss of a single species from within a diverse family. Given recent molecular advances in knowledge of avian evolution, future listings of the world's threatened bird taxa may benefit by introducing a phylogenetic component to threat rating.

It is unlikely that national or international conservation efforts can be directed equally at all species of equal status in the future. Future conservation efforts will have to effect some form of prioritization exercise. I suggest that those species identified by Collar *et al.* (1994) as critical, which also appear in Table 41, must currently rate as the world's highest bird conservation priorities. On this basis, the five species of greatest concern are: Peruvian Plantcutter *Phytotoma raimondii*, Ou *Psittirostra*

psittacea, Nukupuu *Hemignathus lucidus*, Oahu Alauahio *Paroreomyza maculata* and Po'o-uli *Melamprosops phaeosoma*. Four of these five species are Hawaiian Honeycreepers (family Drepanididae).

Conclusions

Evidence from prehistoric and historical extinctions indicates an avian extinction rate that is between 100 and 1 000 times the background avian extinction rate. The known causes of these extinctions have remained essentially the same over time (exploitation, introduced predators and habitat destruction) but the relative importance of the causes has changed from introduced predators to habitat alteration. Island and mainland endemic birds with small ranges face the greatest risk of extinction over the next few decades, ultimately through habitat loss. A time lag between habitat loss and extinction has resulted in fewer than expected extinctions in some regions, but it is likely that further extinctions are already inevitable and that a greater proportion of large species will become extinct than smaller species. An increasing number of mainland species are likely to become extinct with time as it is here, especially in tropical forests, that very high rates of habitat loss are being experienced.

This study has examined only avian species, which form a very small part of global biodiversity. When considering total global biodiversity, it is likely that the number of species facing imminent extinction is very large. It is probable that the magnitude of these extinctions, considered together with extinctions over the last 1 500 years, will be similar to that of previous mass extinctions, justifying fears of some conservationists that an extinction event, unprecedented in human history, is looming.

Appendix 1. List of species that have become extinct since 1600

Author key:

1. Day (1989) * indicates rumours of survival; incorporates the period 1680-1980
2. Clements (1991) * indicates on the verge of extinction
3. Greenway (1967) [p] indicates probably extinct
4. Mountfort (1988) [m] indicates there may be survivors
5. Fuller (1987) [s] indicates subspecies; [r] indicates race ;*[s] indicates probably extinct* and subspecies[s], Uses Archey (1941) for recognition of Moa species
6. Collar *et al.* (1994)
7. Thorstrum *et al.* (1995).
8. IUCN emailed list of extinct birds

Masses are estimated from Dunning (1993).

ORDER	FAMILY NAME	COMMON NAME(S)	SPECIES NAME	MASS (g)	PLACE	DATE	CAUSE	AUTHOR
1. Casuariiformes (2)	Dromaiidae (2)	Dwarf Emu / Kangaroo Island Emu	*Dromaius baudinianus*	10 000	Kangaroo Island[1]	1830[1]	Ex,HD	1[s],3[s],4,5[r],8
		King Island Emu	*Dromaius ater*	40 000	King Island[5]	1822[5]	Ex,HD	5[r],8
2. Dinornithiformes (10)	Dinornithidae (10)		*Dinornis maximus*	275 000	All New Zealand	1850[1]	?	1,5
		Slender Moa	*Dinornis torosis*	100 000		1670[4,8]	Ex,HD	4,5,8
		Greater Broad-Billed Moa	*Euryapteryx gravis*	100 000		1640[5,8]	Ex,HD	1,5,8
			Euryapteryx geranoides	40 000		Before 1700[1]	?	1,5
			Anomalopteryx parvus	40 000		Before 1800[1]	?	1
			Anomalopteryx didiformes	40 000		Before 1800[1]	?	1,5
			Anomalopteryx oweni	40 000		Before 1800[1]	?	1
		Lesser Megalapteryx	*Megalapteryx didinus*	40 000		1765[5,8]	Ex,HD	1,5,8
			Megalapteryx hectori	40 000		Before 1800[1]	?	1
			Megalapteryx benhami	40 000		Before 1800[1]	?	1,5

3. Aepyornitheformes (1)	Aepyornithidae (1)	Elephant Bird	*Aepyornis maximus*	500 000	Madagascar	1650[4,8]	Ex,HD	1,4,8
4. Podicipediformes (2)	Podicipedidae (2) (Grebes)	Atitlan Grebe Colombian Grebe	*Podilymbus gigas* *Podiceps andinus*	500 400	Guatemala Colombia	1980[4]1987[8] 1977[4,8], 1980[2]	HD HD	2,4,6,8 2,4,6,8
5. Procellariiformes (2)	Hydrobatidae (1)	Guadelupe Storm Petrel	*Oceanodroma macrodactyla*	50	Guadelupe (Mexico)	1912[4]	IV,HD	1,2,3,4,5
	Procellariidae (1)	?	*Pterodroma sp.*	400	Rodrigues Island	1726	?	8
6. Pelecaniformes (1)	Phalacrocoracidae (1)	Spectacled Cormorant	*Phalacrocorax perspicillatus*	1 900	Bering Island and satellites	1852[4]	Ex	1,2,3,5,8
7. Ciconiiformes (6)	Ardeidae (4)	New Zealand Little Bittern	*Ixobrychus novaezelandaie*	150	New Zealand	1900[4]	?	4,5[5],8
		Mauritius Night Heron	*Nycticorax mauritianus*	900	Mauritius	By 1700[4]	?	4,8
		Rodrigues Night Heron	*Nycticorax megacephalus*	900	Rodrigues Is.	1761[4]	?	4,5,8
		?	*Nycticorax sp.*	900	Réunion Is	By 1700	?	8
	Ciconiidae (1)	?	*Ciconia sp.*	3 700	Réunion Is.	By 1674	?	8
	Threskiornithidae (1)	Réunion Flightless Ibis	*Borbonibis latipes*	1 200	Réunion Is.	1773[4,8]	?	3,4,8
8. Anseriformes (5)	Anatidae (5)	Mauritian Duck	*Anas theodori*	700	Mauritius	1696[4,8]	?	4,8
		Labrador Duck	*Camptorhynchus labradorius*	?	New England, Canadian maritime provinces[1]	1875[4]1878[8]	?	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Aukland Island Merganser	*Mergus australis*	1000	Aukland Is.	1905[4,8], 1910[1]	IV	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Mauritian Shelduck	*Sarkidiornis mauritianus*	2600	Mauritius	1698[4]	?	1,3,5,8
		Chatham Island Swan	*Cygnus sumnerensis*	7000	Chatham Is.	1590-1690[4,8]	?	4

9. Falconiformes (3)	Cathartidae (1)	Painted Vulture	*Sarcorhamphus sacra*	3400	Florida USA	1800[1]	HD,?	1
	Falconidae (2)	Guadelupe Caracara	*Polyborus lutosis*	900	Guadelupe Is.	1900[4]	Ex	1,2,3,4,5,8
		????	*Falco sp.*	250	Réunion	1674	?	8
10. Galliformes (2)	Phasianidae (2)	New Zealand Quail	*Coturnix novaezelandiae*	100	New Zealand	1868[1], 1875[4]	?,HD,IV	1,3[s],4,5,8
		Himalayan Mountain Quail	*Ophrysia superciliosa*	700	Eastern Punjab, India[1]	1868[4], 1870[1], 1876[5]	?	1,2,4,5
11. Gruiformes (15)	Rallidae (15)	Wake Island Rail	*Rallus wakensis*	150	Wake Is.	1945[1]	Ex	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Tahiti Rail	*Rallus ecaudata*	150	Tahiti	1900[1]	?,IV	1
		Modest Rail	*Rallus modestus*	150	Chatham Is.[1]	1900[4]	IV,HD	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Dieffenbach's Rail	*Rallus dieffenbachii*	150	Chatham Is[1]	1840[4]	IV,HD	1,2,3,4,5[r],8
		Tahitian Red-Billed Rail	*Rallus pacificus*	150	Tahiti Is	Early 1900's[5]	IV	2,3,5,8
		Sharpe's Rail	*Rallus sharpei*	150	Indonesia?[2]	?	?	2
		Ascension Island Flightless Crake	*Atlantisia elpenor*	38	Ascension Is.	1656[4]	Ex	5,8
		Mauritian Red Rail	*Aphanapteryx bonasia*	?	Mauritius	1693[4]	Ex	1,5,8
		Leguat's Rail	*Aphanapteryx leguati*	?	Rodrigues Is.[5]	1700[1], 1760[4,5]	Ex	1,5,8
		Laysan Rail	*Porzana palmeri*	60	Laysan Is.[1,5]	1944[4]	HD	1,5,8
		Sandwich Rail	*Porzana sandwichensis*	60	Hawaii[1,5]	1884[4], 1898[8]	IV	1,5,8
		Kittlitz's Rail / Kosrae Island Crake	*Porzana monasa*	60	Kosrae Is.	1827[4], 1850[1]	IV	1,2,4,5,8
		Barred-winged Rail	*Nesoclopeus poeciloptera*	?	Fiji Islands[6]	1965[1],1973?[8]	IV	1*,6,8
		White Gallinule/Lord Howe Swamphen	*Phorphyrio albus*	800	Lord Howe Is.	1834[4]	Ex	1,2,3[s],5,8
		Mascarene Coot	*Fulica newtoni*	700	Mascarene islands	1693[4]	?	4,8

12. Charadriiformes (5)	Scolopacidae (2)	White-winged Sandpiper	*Prosobonia leucoptera*	36	Tahiti	1773[4]	?,IV	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Moorean Sandpiper	*Prosobonia ellisi*	36	Moorea	1773[4]	?,IV	1
	Heamatopodidae (1)	Canarian Black Oystercatcher	*Haematopus meadewaldoi*	600	Canary Is.[???]	1913[4,8]	O	2,4,5[r],6
	Alcidae (1)	Great Auk	*Alca impennis*	2 000	N Atlantic islands[1] Canada,Denmark,Faeroe Islands, Greenland, Iceland, Russia,UK	1844[4,8]	Ex	1,4,5,8
	Charadriidae (1)	Javanese Wattled Lapwing	*Vanellus macropterus*	200	Java	1920[2]	?	6,8
13. Columbiformes (12)	Raphidae (4)	Dodo	*Raphus cucullatus*	25 000	Mauritius[4]	1655[4]	Ex	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Rodrigues Solitaire	*Pezophaps solitarius*	20 000	Rodrigues Is.	1765[4]	Ex	1,2,4,5,8
		Réunion Dodo or Réunion Solitaire	*Raphus solitarius*	25 000	Réunion Is.	1710-1715[4]	Ex	1,4,8
		White Dodo	*Victoriornis imperialis*	20 000	Réunion Is.[1]	1770[1]	Ex	1
	Columbidae (8)	Bonin Wood Pigeon	*Columba versicolor*	350	Bonin Islands	1889[4]	HD	1,3,4,5,8
		Ryukyu Wood Pigeon	*Columba jouyi*	350	Ryukyu Island	1936[4]	?	2,4,8
		Rodrigues Pigeon	*Columba rodericana*	350	Rodrigues Is.	1726[4]	?,IV	4,5,8
		Dutch Pigeon	*Alectroenus nitidissima*	150	Mauritius[5]	1826, 1835[4,5,8]	?,IV	1,3,4,5,8
		Passenger Pigeon	*Ectopistes migratorius*	200	E'rn USA[5]	13:00, Sept 1 1914[5]	Ex,HD	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Tanna Dove	*Gallicolumba ferruginea*	130	Tanna Island	Post 1774[5], 1800[1]	?	1,2,5
		Choiseul Crested Pigeon	*Microgoura meeki*	?	Choiseul Is. in Solomon Island group	1904[4]	IV[6],HD	1,2,3,4,5,6,8
		Red-moustached Fruit Dove	*Ptilinopus mercierii*	130	French Polynesia[4,8]	1922[4]	IV[6]	2,4,5[r],6,8

14. Psittaciformes (21)	Psittacidae (20)	Norfolk Island Kaka	*Nestor meridionalis*	450	Norfolk Island	1851[4,5]	Ex	1,2,3[s],4,5[r],8
		Yellow-headed Macaw	*Ara gossei*	800	Jamaica[1]	1765[1]	?	1
		Green and Yellow Macaw	*Ara erythrocephala*	800	Jamaica[1]	1842[1]	?	1
		Dominican Macaw	*Ara atwoodi*	800	Dominica, WI	1800[1]	?	1
		Cuban Red Macaw	*Ara tricolor*	800	Cuba	1885[4,5]	Ex,IV	1,3,4,5,8
		Labat's Conure	*Aratinga labati*	120	Guadeloupe, WI	1722[1]	Ex,Trade	1
		Carolina Parakeet	*Conuropsis carolinensis*	?	Carolina, USA	1914[4]	Ex	1,2,3,4,5
		Guadeloupe Amazon	*Amazona violacea*	?	Guadeloupe, WI	1750[1]	Ex.,HD	1
		Martinique Amazon	*Amazona martinica*	?	Martinique Is., WI	1750[1]	HD	1
		Mauritius Grey Parrot	*Lophopsittacus bensoni*	250	Mauritius	1765[4,8]	?	4,8
		Broad-billed Parrot	*Lophopsittacus mauritanus*	250	Mauritius[4]	1680[4,5]1675[8]	?	1,5,8
		Rodriguez Parrot	*Necropsittacus rodericanus*	250	Rodrigues Is.	1761[4,5,8], 1800[1]	Ex	1,4,5,8
		Mascarene Parrot	*Mascarinus mascarenus*	?	Mascarene Islands	1834[4,5,8], 1840[1]	?	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Seychelles Parrot	*Psitticla wardi*	120	Seychelles	1870[4,8], 1881[1],	?	1,2,3[s],4,5[r],8
		Réunion Ring-necked Parakeet	*Psittacula eques*	120	Réunion Is.	1800[1]	HD	1
		Rodriguez Ring-necked Parakeet	*Psittacula exsul*	120	Rodrigues Is.	1876[4,5,8], 1880[1]	?,Ex,IV	1,2,3[m],4,5,8
		Black-fronted Parakeet	*Cyanoramphus zealandicus*	70	Tahiti[4]	1844[4,5,8], 1850[1]	Ex	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Raiatea Parakeet	*Cyanoramphus ulietanus*	70	Raiatea Is.	1773[4,5,8]	?,IV	2,3,4,5,8
		Glaucous Macaw	*Anodorynchus glaucus*	1 200	Paraguay, Uruguay, Brazil, Argentina[4,6]	1955[4]	HD	2,4,6,8
	Lorridae (1)	Paradise Parrot	*Psephotus pulcherrinus*	60	Australia[6]	1927[4]	IV,HD	2,5,6,8
		New Caledonian Lorikeet	*Charmosyna diadema*	50	New Caledonia	1860[4]	Hd,Ex	1*,4
15. Cuculiformes	Cuculidae	Snail-eating Coua	*Coua delalandei*	160	Madagascar[6]	1920[1], 1930[4,5,8]	Ex,HD	1,2,3[p],4,5,6,8

16. Strigiformes (5)	Tytonidea (2)	Mauritian Barn Owl	*Tyto sauzieri*	550	Mauritius	1700[1]	?,Ex	1
		Newton's Barn Owl	*Tyto newtoni*	550	Mauritius[1]	1700[1]	?,Ex	1
	Strigidae (3)	Commerson's Scops Owl	*Scops commersoni*	120	Mauritius[1]	1850[1],1836[8]	?	1,8
		Laughing Owl	*Sceloglaux albifacies*	?	New Zealand	1900[1], 1910[4,5]	HD,IV	2,5,8
		Rodrigues Little Owl	*Athene murivora*	160	Rodrigues Is.	1726[4,5,8]	?	1,4,5,8
17. Apodiformes	Trochilidae	Grace's Emerald	*Chlorostilbon bracei*	3	Bahamas	1887	?	8
18. Coraciiformes	Alcedinidae	Ryukyu Kingfisher	*Halcyon miyakoensis*	80	Ryukyu Is.	1841[4,5], 1887[1]	?	1,3,4,5
19. Piciformes	Picidae	Ivory-billed Woodpecker	*Campephilus principalus*	511	SE USA, Cuba[6]	1991[6]	HD,Ex	1[s]*,2*,6,8

PTO for Passeriformes

20. Passeriformes (42)	Acanthisittidae (2)	Stephen Island Wren	*Xenicus lyalli*	16	Stephen Is.	1874[4,8], 1894[1]	IV	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Bush Wren	*Xenicus longipipes*	16	New Zealand	1965[1]	IV	4,6,8
	Turdidae (3)	Bonin/Klittlitz's Thrush	*Zoothera terristris*	80	Bonin and Peel islands	1828[4,5,8]	IV	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Bay Thrush	*Turdus ulietensis*	80	Raiatea Is.	1780[1]	IV	1,3,5
		Grand Cayman Thrush	*Turdus ravidus*	80	Grand Cayman Is.	1938[5,8]	HD	2,4,5
	Pachycephalinae (1)	Piopio or New Zealand Thrush	*Turnagra capensis*	?	New Zealand	1963[4],1955[8], 1906[5]	IV	4,5,8
	Sylviidae (2)	Chatham Island Fernbird	*Megalurus fufescens*	35	Chatham Is.	1895[1,5]	IV	1,3,5*[s]
		Aldabra Warbler	*Nesillas aldabrana*	<10	Seychelles[6]	1986[6]	IV (rats)	6,8
	Acanthizidae (1)	Lord Howe Island Island Flycatcher	*Gerygone insularis*	<10	Lord Howe Is.	1920[1]	?	1[s],2,3[s],5[s],8
	Muscicapidae (1)	Guam Flycatcher	*Myiagra freyceniti*	13	Guam	1985[6]	IV (snake)	6,8
	Zosteropidae (2)	Lord Howe Island/ Robust White-eye	*Zosterops strenua*	10	Lord Howe Is.	1928[4,5,8]	IV	1,3,5,8
		Marianne Seychelles White-eye	*Zosterops semiflava*	10	Seychelles	1880's[5]	?	1,3,5*[s]
	Meliphagidae (4)	Kioea	*Chaetoptila angustipluma*	30	Hawaii Is.	1860[4,5,8]	?	1,2,4,5
		Hawaiian O'o	*Moho nobilis*	30	Hawaii Is.	1934[1,4,5,8]	HD	1,2,3[P],4,5
		Oahu O'o	*Moho apicalis*	30	Oahu Is.	1837[1,4,5,8]	HD,IV	1,2,4,5,8
		Molokai O'o	*Moho bishopi*	30	Molokai Is.	1904[1]	HD,IV	1,2*,3[P],5
	Emberizidae (2)	Townsend's Finch	*Spiza townsendi*	15	USA[4]	1833[4,8]	?	4,8
		Tumaco Seedeater	*Sporophila insulata*	10	SW Colombia	1912[6]	HD[6]	2
	Drepanididae (11)	Great Amakihi	*Hemignathus sagittirostris*	10	Hawaii Is.[1,2,5]	1900[4,5]	HD	1,2,3[P],4,5,8
		Akiola	*Hemignathus obscurus*	10	Hawaiian islands	1960[6,8]	HD,disease,co	1,2,3,4,8
		Greater Koa Finch	*Psittirostra palmeri*	20	Hawaii Is.[1]	1896[1,4,5,8]	mp, or all 3	1,2,3,4,8
		Lesser Koa Finch	*Psittirostra flaviceps*	20	Hawaii Is.[1]	1891[4,8]	HD etc.	1,3[P],
		Kona Finch	*Psittirostra kona*	20	Hawaii Is.[1]	1894[5]	HD etc.	2
		Lanai Finch	*Dysmorodrepanis munroi*	20	Lanai Is.	Post 1913??[2]	?	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Mamo	*Drepanis pacifica*	20	Hawaii Is.[1]	1899[1,4,5,8]	Ex,HD	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Black Mamo	*Drepanis funerea*	20	Molokai[1]	1907[1,4,5,8]	HD etc.	4,5,8
		Kona Grosbeak	*Chloridops kona*	?	Hawaii Is.[5]	1894[5,8]	HD etc.	4,5,8

		Kakawihie	*Paroreomyza flammea*	11	Hawaii Is.[5]	1963[4,8]	HD	4,6,8
		Ula-Ai-Hawane	*Ciridops anna*	20	Hawaii Is.[5]	1892[1,4,5,8]	?	1,2,3,4,5,8
	Fringillidae (1)	Bonin Grosbeak	*Chaunoproctus ferreorostris*	56	Peel Is. And Bonin islands[1]	1890[4,5,8]	IV	2,4,5,8
	Icteridae (1)	Slender-billed Grackle	*Quiscalus palustris*	130	Mexico[5]	1910[4,5]	?	2,4,5*[s],8
	Ploceidae (1)	?	*Foudia sp.*	17	Reunion	1671[8]	?	8
	Sturnidae (7)	Pohnpei Mountain Starling	*Aplonis pelzelni*	60	Pohnpei Is.	1956[4]	?	4
		Kusaie Mountain Starling	*Aplonis corvina*	60	Kusaie/Kosrae Is.	1828[4,5,8]	IV	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Mysterious Starling	*Aplonis mavornata*	60	Society Islands?	1825[5,8]	?	1,2,3,4,5,8
		Norfolk Island Starling	*Aplonis fusca*	60	Norfolk Is.	1925[4,5]	?	4,5,8
		Bourbon /Reunion Crested Starling	*Fregilupus varius*	80	Reunion Is.	1850-1860[4,5,8] 1868[1]	IV	1,2,3,4,5,8
		White Mascarene Starling	*Necropsar leguati*	80	Mascarene Islands	1840[1]	?	1
		Rodrigues Starling	*Necropsar rodericanus*	80	Rodrigues Is.	1726[4,5,8]	?	1,2,4,5,8
		Blue-Wattled Bulbul	*Pycnonotus nieuwenhuisii*	25	Sumatra and Borneo	Post 1939	HD	2
	Pycnonotidae (2)	?	*Hypsipetes sp.*	40	Rodrigues Is.	1600's?	?	8
	Callaeidae (1)	Huia	*Heteralocha acutirostris*	225	North Is., NZ	1907[4,5,8]	Ex	1*,3[p],4,5,8

Appendix 2. List of subspecies that have become extinct since 1600

Author key:

1. Day (1989) * indicates rumours of survival; incorporates the period 1680-1980
2. Clements (1991) * indicates on the verge of extinction
3. Greenway (1967) [p] indicates probably extinct
4. Mountfort (1988) [m] indicates there may be survivors
5. Fuller (1987) [s] indicates subspecies; [r] indicates race ; *[s] indicates probably extinct* and subspecies[s].
   Uses Archey (1941) for recognition of Moa species
6. Collar *et al.* (1994)

ORDER(S)	FAMILY NAME	COMMON NAME(S)	SUBSPECIES / RACE NAMES	PLACE	DATE	CAUSE	SOURCE
1. Struthioniformes (1)	Struthiornidae (1)	Arabian Ostrich	*Struthio camelus syriacus*	Syria and Arabia	1941[1], 1966[5]	Ex	1[s],5[r]
2. Casuariiformes (1)	Dromaiidae (1) (Emus)	Tasmanian Emu	*Dromaius novaehollandiae diemenensis*	Tasmania	1850[1]	Ex,HD	1[s],3[s],5[r]
3. Ciconiiformes (2)	Ardeidae (1)	Bonin Night Heron	*Nycticorax caledonicus crassirostris*	Peel Island	?	Ex,HD	1[s],3[s],5[s]
	Threskiornithidae (1)	Principe Olive Ibis	*Lambrihis olivacea rothschildi*	Principé, Gulf of New Guinea	1st half of this century	?	5[s]
4. Anseriformes (4)	Anatidae (4)	Coue's Gadwall	*Anas strepera couesi*	Terania Island, Pacific[1]	1874[1]	?	1[s],3[s],5[r]
		Rennel Island Grey Teal	*Anas gibberifrons remissa*	Rennel Island (In Solomon Islands)	1959[5]	Intro of alien fish	5[r]
		Niceforo Brown Pintail	*Anas georgia niceforoi*	Colombia[5]	1952[5]	?	5[r]
		Bering Canada Goose	*Branta canadensis asiatica*	Kurile and Commander Islands[5]	1914[5]	?	3[s], 5[r]

5. Galliformes (1)	Tetraonidae (1)	Heath hen	*Tympanuchus cupido cupido*	New England States, USA[1]	11 March 1932[5]	Ex,HD	1[s],3[s],5[s]
6. Gruiformes (3)	Rallidae (3)	Macquarie Island Banded Rail	*Rallus philippensis macquariensis*	Macquarie Is.	1880[1]	?	1[s], 5[r]
		Jamaican Wood Rail	*Aramides concolor concolor*	Jamaica	1881[1]	IV	1[s],3[s],4
		Iwo Jima Rail	*Porzana cinereus brevipes*	Iwo Jima	1924[1]	IV,HD	1[s],3[s],5[r]
7. Charadriiformes (2)	Scolopacidae (2)	Barrier sub-Antarctic Snipe	*Coenocorypha auklandica barrierensis*	Little Barrier Island	1870[5]	?	3[s],5[r]
		Stewart Island sub-Antarctic Snipe	*Coenocorypha auklandica iredalei*	Stewart Is.	?	?	5[r]
8. Columbiformes (5)	Columbidae (5)	Lord Howe Island Pigeon	*Columba vitiensis godmanae*	Lord Howe Is.	1853[1]	?	1[s],5[r]
		Madeiran Wood Pigeon	*Columba palumbus maderensis*	Madeira	Early 1900's[5]	?	5[r]
		Cebu Amethyst Fruit Dove	*Phapitreron amethystina frontalis*	Cebu Is.land	Before 1900[5]	IV[6],HD	5[r]
		Seychelles Turtle Dove	*Streptopelia picturata rostrata*	Seychelles	1975[5]	O	5[r]
		Norfolk Island Pigeon	*Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae spadicea*	Norfolk Island	1801[1]	IV,HD	1[s],3[s],5[r]
9. Psittaciformes (8)	Psittacidae (8)	Puerto Rican Conure	*Aratinga choloptera maugei*	Mona Island, Puerto Rico	1892[1]	Ex,O	1[s],3[s],5[r]
		Western Carolina Parakeet	*Conuropsis carolinensis ludovciana*	W Carolina, USA	1914[4]	Ex	1[s],2,3[s]
		Eastern Carolina Parakeet	*Conuropsis carolinensis carolinensis*	E Carolina, USA	1914[4]	Ex	1[s],2,3[s],4,5
		Culebra Island Amazon	*Amazona vittata gracilicep*s	Culebra Is.	1899[1]	?	1[s],3[s], 5[r]
		Siquijor Hanging Parrot	*Loriculus phillipensis siquijorensis*	Siquijor Is.	This century[5]	?	5[r]
		Cebu Hanging Parrot	*Loriculus phillipensis chrysonotis*	Cebu Is.	This century[5]	?	5[r]
		Macquarie Island Parakeet	*Cyanoramphus novaezelandaie erythrotis*	Macquarie Is.	1890[1], early 1900's[5]	Ex,Iv	1[s],3[s], 5[r]
		Red-fronted Parakeet	*Cyanoramphus novaezelandaie subflavescens*	Lord Howe Is.	1869[1,5]	Ex,HD	1[s],3[s], 5[r]

10. Strigiformes (6)	Strigidae (6)	Comoro Scops Owl	*Otus ritilus capnodes*	Anjouan, Comoro Is.[1]	1890[1]	?	1[s]
		South Island Laughing Owl	*Sceloglaux albifacies albifacies*	New Zealand	1900[1], 1910[4,5] 1914[8]	HD,IV	1[s]*,4
		North Island Laughing Owl	*Sceloglaux albifacies rubifacies*	New Zealand	1900[1], 1910[4,5] 1914[8]	HD,IV	1[s],3[s]
		Antigua Burrowing Owl	*Speotyto cunicularia amaura*	Antigua, Nevis and St Kitts in WI[1]	1900[1,5]	IV	1[s],3[s],5[r]
		Guadeloupe Burrowing Owl	*Speotyto cunicularia guadeloupensis*	Marie Galante, WI[1]	1900[1]	IV	1[s],3[r]
		Lord Howe Island Morepork	*Nonox novaeselandiae albaria*	Lord Howe Island	1940[5]	?	5[r]
11. Piciformes (1)	Picidae (1)	Guadelupe Flicker	*Colaptes cafer rufipileus*	Guadelupe Is., Mexico[1]	1906[1]	HD,IV	1[s],3[s]

PTO for Passeriform subspecies listing

12. Passeriformes (61)	Acanthisittidae (2)	North Island Wren	*Xenicus longipipes stokesi*	North Island	1900[1] }1972[4,8]	IV	1[s],4
		Stead's Bush Wren	*Xenicus longipipes variabilis*	Stewart Is[1]	1965[1] }	IV	1[s],4
	Troglodytidae (3)	Guadelupe Bewick's Wren	*Thryomanes bewikii brevicauda*	Guadelupe Is.	1897[5], 1892[1]	IV,HD	1[s],3[s]
		Martinique House Wren	*Troglodytes aedon martinicensis*	Martinique Is.	1900[1]	IV,HD	1[s],3[s]
		St Lucia House Wren	*Troglodytes aedon mesoleucus*	St. Lucia, WI	1971[1]	IV,HD	1[s]
	Turdidae (12)	Lord Howe Island Blackbird	*Turdus poliocephalus vivitinctus*	Lord Howe Is.	1920[1,5]	IV	1,3[s], 5*[s]
		Mare Island Thrush	*Turdus poliocephalus mareensis*	Mare Is.	During WW2	?	3,5*[s]
		Lifu Island Thrush	*Turdus poliocephalus pritzbueri*	Lifu Is.	During WW2	?	5*[s]
		Yakushima Seven Islands Thrush	*Turdus celaenops yakushimensis*	Yakushima Seven islands	1904[5]	?	5*[s]
		Lanai Omao	*Myadestes obscurus lanaiensis*	Lanai Is.	1931[1]	HD,O	1[s],3[s]
		Oahu Omao	*Myadestes obscurus oahensis*	Oahu Is.	1825[1]	HD	1[s],3[s]
		Molokai Omao	*Myadestes obscurus rutha*	Molokai Is	1963[5]	?,IV,HD	1[s],3[s]
		Cebu Black Shama	*Copsychus niger cebuensis*	Cebu Is.	1956[5]	IV	5*[s]
		Lanai Thrush	*Myadestes obscurus lanaiesiss*	Lanai Is.	1931[5]	IV,?HD	1[s],3[s],5*[s]
		Oahu Thrush	*Myadestes obscurus oahensis*	Oahu Is.	First half of 19th centuary[5]	IV,HD	1[s],2,5*[s]
		Burma Jerdon's Babbler	*Moupinia altirostris altirostris*	S'rn Burma	During WW2[5]	?	5*[s]
		Muriel's Chat	*Saxicola dacotiae murielae*	Allegranzo Is.	Post 1913[5]	?	5*[s]
	Dicaeidae (1)	Cebu Orange-bellied Flowerpecker	*Dicaeum trigonostigma pallida*	Cebu Is.	1963	HD	5*[s]
	Sylviidae (6)	Laysan Millerbird	*Acrocephalus familiaris familiaris*	Laysan Is.	1920[1], 1912-1923[4,5]	HD	1[s],3[s],5*[s]
		Lord Howe Island Grey Warbler or Lord Howe	*Grygone igata insularis*	Lord Howe Is.	Post 1918[5], 1920[1]	?	1[s],2,3[s],5*[s]

		Gerygone					
		Hautrine Island Long-billed Reed Warbler	*Acrocephalus caffra garretti*	Hautrine Is.	?	?	5*[s]
		Raiatea Long-billed Reed Warbler	*Acrocephalus caffra musae*	Raiatea Is.	?	?	5*[s]
		Astrolabe Nightingale Reed Warbler	*Acrocephelus luscinia astrolabii*	Pacific somwhere	?	?	5*[s]
		Diato Japanese Bush Warbler	*Cettia diphone restricta*	Borodino (Diato) islands	?	?	5*[s]
	Paridae (1)	Daito Varied Tit	*Parus varius orii*	Borodino Is.	1923[5]	?	5*[s]
	Muscicapidae (3)	Tonga Tabu Tahiti Flycatcher	*Pomarea nigra atra*	Tahiti	1800[1]	?	1
		Maupiti Flycatcher	*Pomarea nigra pomarea*	Maupiti, Solomon islands	1823[5]	?	5*[s]
		Lord Howe Island Fantail	*Rhipidura fuliginosa cervina*	Lord Howe Is.	1924	IV	1,3
	Zosteropidae (2)	Cebu Everett's White-eye	*Zosterops everitti everitti*	Cebu Is.	Early 19th century	?	5*[s]
		Lord Howe Island Grey-backed White Eye	*Zosterops lateralis tephropleura*	Lord Howe Is.	?	?	5*[s]
	Meliphagidae (1)	Chatham Island Bell Bird	*Anthornis melanura melanocephalus*	Chatham Is.	1906[1,5]	HD,IV	1,3[s],5*[s]
	Emberizidae (3)	St Kitts Puerto Rican Bullfinch	*Loxigilla portoricensis grundis*	St. Kitts Is.	1880[5], 1900[1]	?	1[s],3[s],5*[s]
		Guadelupe Rufous-sided Towhee	*Pipilo erythrophthalmus consobrinus*	Guadelupe Is.	1897[5], 1900[1]	IV monkeys	1[s],3[s], 5*[s]
		Santa Barbara Song Sparrow	*Melospiza melodia graminea*	California[5]	1960's[5]	?	5*[s]
	Drepanididae (12)	Molokai Alauwahio	*Loxops maculata flammea*	Molokai Is	1970[1]		1[s],3[s],
		Lanai Alauwahio	*Loxops maculata montana*	Lanai Is.	1937[1]	HD,	1[s],3[s]
		Oahu Akepa	*Loxops caccinea rufa*	Oahu Is.	1900[1]	competion	1[s],3[s]
		Hawaiian Akioloa	*Hemignathus obscurus obscurus*	Hawaii Is.	1940[1]	and avian malaria	1[s],3[s],5*[s],6

		Lanai Akioloa	*Hemignathus obscurus lanaiensis*	Lanai Is.	1894[1]	or combination	1[s],2,3[s],5*[s],6
		Oahu Akioloa	*Hemignathus obscurus ellisianus*	Oahu Is.	1840[1,5]	of all	1[s],2,3,5*[s],6
		Kauai Akioloa	*Hemignathus obscurus procerus*	Kauai Is.	1965[1]	"	1[s],2,6
		Oahu Nukupuu	*Hemignathus lucidus licidus*	Oahu Is.	1890[1,5]	"	1[s],3[s],5*[s]
		Kauai Nukupuu	*Hemignathus lucidus hanapepe*	Kauai Is.	1905[1]	"	1[s]
		Maui Nukupuu	*Hemignathus lucidus affinis*	Maui Is.	1896[1]	"	1[s],3[s],
		Lanai Creeper	*Paroreomyza montana montana*	Lanai Is.	1930's[5]	HD	5*[s]
		Laysan Apapane	*Himatione sanguinea freethii*	Laysan Is.	1925	HD	1
	Fringillidae (1)	McGregor's House Finch	*Carpodacus mexicanus mcgregori*	San Benito Islands, USA	1838[5]	?	5*[s]
	Icteridae (2)	Slender-billed Grackle	*Quiscalus palustris mexicanus*	Mexico[5]	1910[4,5]	?	4,5*[s]
		Grand Cayman Jamaican Oriole	*Icterus leucopteryx bairdi*	Grand Cayman Is.	Post WW2[5] Pre-1950	?	5*[s]
	Ploceidae (1)	Réunion Fody	*Foudia madagascariensis bruante*	Réunion Is.	1776[1]	?	1[s]
	Sturnidae (1)	Lord Howe Island Starling	*Aplonis fuscus hullianus*	Lord Howe Is.	1925[1]	IV	1[s],3[s]
	Oriolidae (1)	Cebu Dark-throated Oriole	*Oriolus xanthonotus assimilis*	Cebu Is.	1906[5]	?	5*[s]
	Callaeidae (1)	South Island Kokako	*Callaeas cinerea cinerea*	South Is., NZ	1961[5].	?	5*[s]

References

Anderson A. 1989. *Prodigious birds, moas and moa-hunting in prehistoric New Zealand.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Archey G. 1941. The moa, a study of the Dinornithiformes. *Bulletin of the Auckland Institute and Museum* 1: 5 - 101.

Arrhenius O. 1921. Species and area. *J. Ecology* 9: 95 - 99.

Atkinson I. A. E. 1985. The spread of commensal species of *Rattus* to oceanic islands and their effects on island avifaunas. In: Moors P. J (ed.). *Conservation of island birds.* pp. 35 - 81, International Council for Bird Preservation, Cambridge.

Balmford A. 1996. Extinction filters and current resilience: the significance of past selection pressures for conservation biology. *Trends Ecol. Evol. 11*: 193 - 196.

Balmford A. and Long A. 1994. Avian endemism and forest loss. *Nature* 372: 623 - 624.

Balon E. K. 1993. Dynamics of biodiversity and mechanisms of change: a plea for balanced attention to form creation and extinction. *Biol. Cons.* 66: 5 - 16.

Bell B. D. 1977. The Big South Cape Islands rat irruption. In: Dingwall P. R., Atkinson I. A. E and Hay C. (eds). *The ecology and control of rodents in New Zealand nature reserves.* pp. 33 - 45, Dept of Lands and Survey, Wellington.

Belovsky G. E. 1987. Extinction models and mammalian persistence. In: Soulé M. E. (ed.), *Viable populations for conservation.* pp. 35 - 57, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Bibby C. J. 1994. Recent, past and future extinctions in birds. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B* 344:35 - 40.

Blackburn T. M. and Gaston K. J. 1994. The distribution of body sizes of the worlds bird species. *Oikos* 70: 127 - 130.

Blake J. G. and Karr J. R. 1984. Species composition of bird communities and the conservation benefits of large versus small forests. *Biol. Conserv.* 30: 173 - 187.

Blockstein D. E. and Tordoff H. B. 1985. A contemporary look at the extinction of the Passenger Pigeon. *American Birds* 39: 845 - 851.

Boeklen W. J. and Simberloff D. 1986. Area-based extinction models in conservation. In: Elliot D. K. (ed.). *Dynamics of extinction.* pp. 247 - 276, John Wiley and Sons, New York.

Brash A. R. 1987. The history of avian extinction and forest conversion on Puerto Rico. *Biol. Conserv.* 39: 97 - 111.

Brooke R K. 1988. Review: Extinct Birds. *Bokmakierie* 40 (3): 89 - 90.

Brooks T. and Balmford A. 1996. Atlantic forest extinctions. *Nature* 380: 115.

Brooks T., Pimm S. L. and Collar N. J. (1997). Deforestation predicts the number of threatened birds in insular southeast Asia. *Conserv. Biol.* 11: 382 - 394.

Brown K. S. and Brown G. G. 1992. Habitat alteration and species loss in Brazilian forests. In: Whitmore T. C. and Sayer J. A (eds). *Tropical deforestation and species extinction.* pp. 119 - 142, Chapman and Hall, London.

Bruton M. N. 1989. The ecological significance of alternate life-history styles. In: Bruton M. N. (ed.). *Alternative life-history styles of animals, perspectives in vertebrate science 6.* Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht.

Bruton M. N. 1990. Trends in the life-history styles of vertebrates: an introduction to the second ALHS volume. *Env. Biol. Fish.* 28: 309 - 313.

Bucher E. H. 1992. The causes of extinction of the Passenger Pigeon. In: Power D. M. (ed.). *Current Ornithology* 9: 1 - 36, Plenum, New York.

Budiansky S. 1994. Extinction or miscalculation. *Nature* 370: 105.

Clements J. F. 1991. *Birds of the world. A check list.* Ibis Publishing Company, California.

Cook C. (ed.) 1981. *Pear's Encyclopedia.* Richard Clay Ltd, Suffolk.

Collar N. J. and Andrew P. 1988. *Birds to watch: the ICBP world checklist of threatened birds.* ICBP Technical Publication no. 8, International Council for Bird Preservation, Cambridge.

Collar N. J., Crosby M. J. and Stattersfield A.J. 1994. *Birds to watch 2. The world list of threatened birds.* Page Bros Ltd, Norwich.

Culotta E. 1994. Model predicts "Extinction debt". *Science* 265: 1178 - 1179.

Day D. 1989. *The encyclopedia of vanished species.* Mclaren Publishing Ltd, Hong Kong.

del Hoyo J., Elliott A. and Sangatal J. (Eds) 1992. *Handbook of the birds of the world, Volume 1.* Barcelona: Lynx Edicions.

Diamond J. M. 1984a. "Normal" extinctions of isolated populations. In: Nitecki H. (ed.). *Extinctions.* pp. 191 - 246.

Diamond J. M. 1984b. Historic extinctions: a Rosetta Stone for understanding prehistoric extinctions. In: Martin P. S. and Klein R.G. (eds). *Quaternary extinctions: a pre-historic revolution*. pp. 824 - 862, University of Arizona Press, Tucson.

Diamond J. M. 1987. Extant unless proven extinct? Or, extinct unless proven extant. *Conserv. Biol.* 1: 77 - 79.

Diamond J. M. 1989. The present, past and future of human caused extinctions. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B* 325: 469 - 477.

Diamond J.M. and Mayr E. 1976. Species-area relation for birds of the Solomon archipelago. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 73: 262 - 266.

Dinerstein E. and Wikramanayake E. D. 1993. Beyond "hotspots: how to prioritize investment to conserve biodiversity in the Indo-Pacific region. *Conserv. Biol.* 7: 53 - 65.

Ebenhard T. 1988. Introduced birds and mammals and their ecological effects. *Swed. Wildl. Res.* Viltrevy 13 (4).

Ebenman B., Hedenstrom A., Wennergren U., Ekstam B, Landin J. and Tyrberg T. 1995. The relationship between population density and body size: the role of extinction and motility. *Oikos* 73: 225 - 230.

Ehrlich P. R. 1986. Extinction: what is happening now and what needs to be done. In: Elliott D. K. (ed.). *Dynamics of extinction*. pp. 157 - 164, John Wiley and Sons, New York.

Ehrlich P. R. 1993. Is the extinction crisis real? *Wildlife Cons.* 96: 66 - 67. Sept/Oct '93.

Ehrlich P. R. 1994. Energy use and biodiversity loss. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B* 344: 99 - 104.

Ehrlich P. R. and Ehrlich A. H. 1981. *Extinction*. Random House, New York.

Ehrlich P. R. and Wilson E. O. 1991. Biodiversity studies: science and policy. *Science* 253: 758 - 762

Ehrlich P. R., Ehrlich A. H. and Holdren J. P. 1977. *Ecoscience: population, resources, enviroment*. W. H. Freeman, San Fransisco.

Frankham R. 1988. Inbreeding and extinction. *Conserv. Biol.* 12: 665 - 675.

Fuller E. 1987. *Extinct birds.* Penguin Books Ltd, London.

Gaston K. J. 1994. *Rarity*. Chapman and Hall, London.

Gaston K. J. and Blackburn T. M. 1995. Birds, body size and the threat of extinction. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B* 347: 205 - 212.

Gaston K. J. and May R. M. 1992. Taxonomy of taxonomists. *Nature* 356: 281 - 282.

Gilbert L. E. 1980. Food web organization and the conservation of neotropical diversity. In: Soule M. E. and Wilcox B. A. (eds) . *Conserv. Biol.* pp. 11 - 33, Sunderland: Sinauer.

Gill F. B. 1990. *Ornithology.* W. H. Freeman and Company, New York.

Goetz P. W. (ed.). 1968. *Encyclopedia Britannica.* William Benton, Chicago.

Gotelli N. J. and Graves G. R. 1990. Body size and the occurrence of avian species on land-bridge islands. *J. Biogeogr.* 17: 315 - 325.

Grant P. 1995. Comemerating extinctions. *Am. Sci.* 83: 420 - 422.

Grainger A. 1993. Rates of deforestation in the humid tropics: estimates and measurements. *Geographical Journal* 159: 33 - 44.

Graves W. 1990 (ed.). *National Geographic Atlas of the World, 6th edition.* National Geographic, Washington D. C.

Greenway J. C. 1967. *Extinct and vanishing birds of the world.* Dover Publications Inc., New York.

Groombridge B. 1993. *The 1994 IUCN Red list of threatened animals.* IUCN, Gland.

Heywood V. H., Mace G. M., May R. M. and Stuart S. N. 1994. Uncertainties in extinction rates. *Nature* 368: 105.

Hockey P. A. R. 1987. The presence of coastal utilization by man on the presumed extinction of the Canarian Black Oystercatcher *Haematopus meadewoldi. Biol. Cons.* 39: 49 - 62.

Horne J. F. M. 1987. Vocalizations of the endemic land-birds of the Mascarene Islands. In: Diamond A. W. (ed.). *Studies of Mascarene Island Birds.* pp. 101 - 150, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Hsu K. J. 1982. Mass mortality and its enviromental and evolutionary consequences. *Science* 216: 249 - 250.

Humphries C. J. and Fisher C. T. 1994. The loss of Bank's legacy. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B* 344: 3 - 9.

International Council for Bird Preservation 1992. *Putting biodiversity on the map.* International Council for Bird Preservation, Cambridge.

Jablonski D. 1994. Extinctions in the fossil record. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B* 344: 11 - 17.

Jackson J. B. C. 1995. Constancy and change of life in the sea. In: Lawton J. H. and May R. M. (eds). *Extinction Rates.* pp. 45 - 54, Oxford University Press, Oxford

Janzen D. H. and Martin P. S. 1982. Neotropical anachronisms: the fruits the *Gompotheres* ate. *Science* 215: 19 - 27.

Jenkins M. 1992. Species extinction. In: Groombridge B. (ed). *Global biodiversity: status of the earth's living resources.* Pp. 192 - 205. Chapman and Hall, London.

Johnson T. H. and Stattersfield A. J. 1990. A global review of island endemic birds. *Ibis* 132: 167 - 180.

Johnson M. P, Mason L. G. and Raven P. H. 1968. Ecological parameters and plant species diversity. *Am. Nat.* 102: 297 - 306.

King W. B. 1980. Ecological basis of extinction in birds. *Acta XVII Congr. Int. Ornith.*: 905 - 911.

King W. B 1985. Island birds: will the future repeat the past? In: Moors P. J. (ed.). *Conservation of island birds.* pp. 3 - 15, International Council for the Bird Preservation (Tech. Publ. 3), Cambridge.

Krajewski C. 1991. Review: Phylogeny and classification of birds: a study in molecular evolution. *Auk* 108: 987-990.

Langrand O. 1990. *Guide to the birds of Madagascar.* Yale University Press, New Haven.

Mace G. M. 1994. Classifying threatened species: means and ends. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B* 344: 91 - 97.

Magsalay P., Brooks T., Duston G. and Timmins R. 1995. Extinction and conservation on Cebu. *Nature* 373: 294.

May R. M. (ed.) 1981. *Theoretical ecology.* Blackwell, London.

May R. M. 1988. How many species are there on earth? *Science* 241: 1441 - 1449.

May R. M., Lawton J. H. and Stork N. E. 1995. Assessing extinction rates. In: Lawton J. H. and May R. M. (eds). *Extinction rates.* pp. 1 - 24, Oxford University Press, Oxford.

McNeely J. A., Miller K. R., Reid W. V., Mittermeier R. A. and Werner T. B. 1990. *Conserving the world's biological diversity.* International Union for Nature and the Conservation of Natural Resources, World Resources Institute, Conservation International, World Wildlife Fund, Washington D.C.

Milberg P. and Tyrberg T. 1993. Naive birds and noble savages - a review of man-caused prehistoric extinctions of island birds. *Ecography* 16: 229 - 250.

Moors P. J. and Atkinson I. A. E. 1984. Predation on seabirds by introduced animals and factors affecting it's severity. In: Coxall J. P., Evans P. G. H. And Schreiber R. W. (eds). *Status and conservation of the world's seabirds*. International Council for Bird Preservation (Techn. Publ. 2), Cambridge.

Moors P.J., Atkinson I. A.E. and Sherley G. H. 1992. Reducing the rat threat to island birds. *Bird Cons. Int.* 2:93 - 114.

Mountfort G. 1988. *Rare birds of the world.* William Collins Sons and Co. Ltd, London.

Monroe B. L. and Sibley C. G. 1993. *A world checklist of birds.* Yale University Press, New Haven.

Myers N. 1979. *The sinking ark.* Pergamon Press, Oxford.

Myers N. 1988. Threatened biotas: "hotspots" in tropical forests. *Enviromentalist* 8: 1 - 20.

Myers N. 1992. *The primary source: tropical forests and our future.* W. W. Norton & Company, New York.

Naeem S., Thompson L., Lawler S., Lawton J. H. and Woodfin R. 1994. Declining biodiversity can alter the performance of ecosystems. *Nature* 368: 734 - 737.

New International Version Study Bible 1985. The Zondervan Corporation, Michigan.

Nicholson T. D. 1991. Preserving the earth's biological diversity: the role of museums. *Curator* 34: 85 - 108.

O'Hara R. J. 1991. Review: Phylogeny and classification of birds: a study in molecular evolution. *Auk* 108: 990-994.

Olson S. L. 1986. An early account of some birds from Mauke, Cook Islands, and the origin of the "mysterious starling" *Aplonis mavornata*. *Notornis* 33: 197 - 208.

Olson S. L. 1989. Notes on some Hawaiian birds from Cook's third voyage. *Bullitin of the British Ornithologist's Club 109: 201 - 205.*

Olson S. L. and James H. F. 1984. The role of Polynesians in the extinction of the avifauna of the Hawaiian islands. In: Martin P. S. and Klien R. G. (eds). *Quatenary extinctions: a prehistoric revolution.* pp. 768 - 780, University of Arizona Press, Tucson.

Owen M, Atkinson-Willes G. L. and Salmon D. G. 1986. *Wildfowl in Great Britian.*Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Peters R. H. and Raelson J. V. 1984. Relations between individual size and mammalian population density. *Am. Nat.* 124: 498 - 517.

Peterson A. T. 1992. Review: Sibley and Ahlquist (1990). *Ibis* 134: 204-206.

Pimm S. L. 1995. Seeds of our own destruction. *New Scientist* 146: 31 - 35, April 8.

Pimm S. L. and Askins R. A. 1995. Forest losses predict bird extinctions in eastern North America. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 92: 9343 - 9347.

Pimm S. L., Jones H. L. and Diamond J. 1988. On the risk of extinction. *Am. Nat.* 132: 757 - 785.

Pimm S. L., Diamond J., Reed T. M., Russel G. J. and Verner J. 1993. Times to extinction for small populations of large birds. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90: 10871 - 10875.

Pimm S. L., Moulton M. P. and Justice L. J. 1994. Bird extinctions in the central Pacific. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B* 344: 27 - 33.

Pimm S. L., Russel G. J., Gittleman J. L. and Brooks T. M. 1995. The future of biodiversity. *Science* 269: 347 - 350.

Pratt D. H., Bruner P. L. and Berrett D. G. 1987. *The birds of Hawaii and the tropical Pacific.* Princeton University Press, New Jersey.

Preston F. W. 1962. The canonical distribution of commonness and rarity. *Ecology* 43: 185 - 215, 410 - 32.

Raikow R. J. 1991. Review: Phylogeny and classification of birds: a study in molecular evolution. *Auk* 108: 9985-987.

Raup D. M. 1988. Diversity crises in the geological past. In: Wilson E. O. (ed.). *Biodiversity.* pp. 51 - 57, National Academy Press, Washington D.C.

Raup D. M. 1992. Large body impact and extinction in the Phanerozoic. *Paleobiology* 18: 80 - 88.

Raven P.H. 1988. Our diminishing tropical forests. In: Wilson E. O. (ed.). *Biodiversity.* pp. 119 - 122, National Academy Press, Washington D.C.

Raven P. H. and Wilson E. O. 1992. A fifty year plan for biodiversity surveys. *Science* 258: 1099 - 1100.

Reid W. V., and Miller K. R. 1989. *Keeping options alive: The scientific basis for preserving biodiversity*. World Resources Institute, Washington, D.C.

Rhymer J. M., Williams M. J. and Braun M. J. 1994. Mitochondrial analysis of gene flow between New Zealand Mallards (*Anas platyrhynchos*) and Grey Ducks *(A. superciliosa*). *Auk* 111: 970 - 978.

Ribbink A. J. 1994. Biodiversity and speciation of freshwater fishes with particular reference to African cichlids. In: Giller P. S., Hildrew A. G. and Raffaelli D. G. (eds). *Aquatic ecology. Scale, pattern and process*. Blackwell, London.

Ribbink A. J., Marsh B. A., Marsh A. C., Ribbink A. C. and Sharp B. J. 1983. A preliminary survey of the cichlid fishes of the rocky habitats of Lake Malawi. *S. Afr. J. Zool.* 18: 149 - 310.

Rosenzweig M. L. 1995. *Species diversity in space and time*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Savidge J. A. 1987. Extinction of an island forest avifauna by an introduced snake. *Ecology* 68: 660 - 668.

Sayer J. A. and Whitmore T. C. 1991. Tropical moist forests: Destruction and species extinction. *Biol. Conserv.* 55: 199 - 213.

Sibley C. G. and Ahlquist J. E. 1990. *Phylogeny and classification of birds: a study in molecular evolution.* Yale University Press, New Haven.

Sibley C. G. and Monroe B. L. 1990. *Distribution and taxonomy of birds of the world.* Yale University Press, New Haven.

Siegel-Causey D. 1992. Review: Distribution and taxonomy of birds of the world. *Auk* 109: 939-944.

Simberloff D. 1984. The next mass extinction? *Garden.* pp. 2 - 8, March/April.

Simberloff D. 1986a. Are we on the verge of a mass extinction in tropical rain forests? In: Elliot D. K. (ed.). *Dynamics of extinction.* pp. 165 - 180, Wiley, New York.

Simberloff D. 1986b. The proximate causes of extinction. In: Raup D. M. and Jablonski D. (eds). *Patterns and processes in the history of life*. pp. 259 - 276, Berlin: Springer-Verlag.

Simberloff D. 1992. Do species-area curves predict extinction in fragmented forests? In: Whitmore T.C. and Sayer J. A. (eds). *Tropical deforestation and species extinction.* pp. 75 - 89, Chapman and Hall, London.

Simberloff D. 1994. Habitat fragmentation and population extinction of birds. *Ibis* 137: S105 - S111.

Simon J. L. 1995. Body count. *The Sciences*. 35: 5 (July/August).

Simon J. L. and Wildavsky A. 1993. Facts, not species, are periled. *New York Times*, Late Edition, pp. A23, May 13.

Sisk T. D., Launer A. E., Switky K. R. and Ehrlich P. R. 1994. Identifying extinction threats. *Bioscience* 44: 592 - 604.

Smith F. D. M., May R. M., Pellew R., Johnson T. H. and Walter K. S. 1993a. Estimating extinction rates. *Nature* 64: 494 - 496.

Smith F. D. M., May R. M., Pellew R., Johnson T. H. and Walter K. S. 1993b. How much do we know about the current extinction rate? *Trends Ecol. Evol.* 8: 375 - 378.

Smith J. M. 1989. The causes of extinction. In: Chaloner W. G. and Hallam A. (eds). *Evolution and extinction*. pp. 1 - 12, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Soulé M. E. 1983. What do we really know about extinction? In: Schonewald-Cox C. M., Chambers S. M., McBryde B. and Thomas L. (eds). *Genetics and conservation: A reference manual for managing wild animal and plant populations*. pp 111 - 124, Benjamin-Cummings, Menlo Park, California.

Soulé M. E., Bolger D. T., Alberts A. C., Wright J., Sorice M. and Hill S. 1988. Reconstructed dynamics of rapid extinctions of chaparral-requiring birds in urban habitat islands. *Conserv. Biol.* 2: 75 - 92.

Stattersfield A. J., Crosby M. J., Long A. J. and Wege G. C. (1998). *Endemic bird areas of the world. Priorities of biodiversity conservation*. BirdLife International, Cambridge.

Staub F. 1976. *Birds of the Mascarenes and St. Brandon*. Organisation Normale des Entreprises LTEE, Labama House, Port Louis, Mauritius.

Stevens W. K. 1995a. How many species are being lost? Scientists try a new yardstick. *New York Times*, Late Edition, pp. C4, July 25.

Stevens W. K. 1995b. Predicting bird extinctions from deforestation. *New York Times*, Late Edition, pp. C4, September 26.

Steadman D. W. 1995. Prehistoric extinctions of Pacific island birds: biodiversity meets zooarchaeology. *Science* 276: 1123 - 1131.

Stork N. E. 1988. Insect diversity: facts, fiction and speculation. *Biol. J. Linn. Soc.* 35: 321 - 3 37.

Temple S. A. 1978. The concept of managing endangered birds. In: Temple S. A. (ed.). *Endangered birds: Management techniques for preserving threatened species*. pp 3 - 9, University of Wisconsin Press, Madison.

Temple S. A. 1986. The problems of avian extinctions. *Current Ornithology* 3: 453 - 485.

Terborg J. and Winter B. 1980. Some causes of extinction. In: Soulé M. E. and Wilcox B. A. (eds). *Conserv. Biol.*. pp. 119 - 133, Sunderland: Sinauer.

The Times Atlas of the World, Comprehensive Edition 1975. Times Books, London.

Thorstrum R., Watson R. T., Damary B., Toto F., Baba M. and Baba V. 1995. Repeated sightings and first capture of a live Madagascar Serpent-eagle *Eutriorchis astur*. *Bullitin of the British Ornithologist's Club* 115: 40 - 45

Tilman D. and Downing J. A. 1994. Biodiversity and stability in grasslands. *Nature* 367: 363 - 365.

Tilman D., May R. M., Lehman C.L. and Nowak M. A. 1994. Habitat destruction and the extinction debt. *Nature* 371: 65 - 66.

Tracy R. C. and George L. T. 1992. On the determinants of extinction. *Am. Nat.* 139: 102 - 122.

Urdiales C. and Pereira P. 1993. *Identification key of* O. jaimaicensis, O. leucocephala *and their hybrids*. Madrid: ICONA.

Warner R. E. 1968. The role of introduced diseases in the extinction of the endemic Hawaiian avifauna. *Condor* 70: 101 - 120.

Whitmore T. C and Sayer J. A. 1992 (eds). *Tropical deforestation and species extinction*. Chapman and Hall, London.

Williams C. B. 1943. Area and the number of species. *Nature* 152: 264 - 267.

Williamson M. 1989. Natural extinction on islands. In: Chaloner W. G. and Hallam A. (eds). *Evolution and extinction*. pp. 217 - 228, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Wilson E. O. 1988. The current state of biological diversity. In: Wilson E. O. (ed.). *Biodiversity*. pp. 3 - 18, National Academy Press, Washington D.C.

Wilson E. O. 1989. Threats to biodiversity. *Sci. Am.* 261: 108 - 112.

Wilson E. O. 1992. *The diversity of life*. Harvard University Press, Cambridge.

Wilson E. O. and Peter F. M. (eds) 1988. *Biodiversity*. National Academy Press, Washington.

Witmer M. C. and Cheke A. S. 1991. The Dodo and the tambalacoque tree: an obligate mutualism reconsidered. *Oikos* 61: 133 - 137.

World Resources Institute, United Nations Environment Programme, and United Nations Development Programme. 1990. *World Resources, 1990 - 91*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Zink R. M. and McKitrick M. C. 1995. The debate over species concepts and its implications for ornithology. *Auk* 112: 701 - 719.

ABSTRACT

This dissertation is concerned with the manner in which education can respond creatively and constructively to the challenges presented by the medium of television. Teleconsciousness, as I have called it, involves an awareness of the pervasiveness of television and an understanding of its role as myth-maker, making sense of the world to viewers in a particular way. Teleconsciousness is directly focussed on the construction process by which televisual material is made - exposing, explaining and exploring the values and viewpoints by which such constructions are shaped. The approach I suggest is one of interpreting television, a process which moves from description of the manifest, observable content of television to interpretation of the mythic significance thereof by way of association. A framework for interpreting television, as well as examples of how such an approach could proceed, are discussed. Teleconsciousness is by implication educonsciousness as well. Interpreting television requires reference to and consideration of the curriculum though which it is pragmatically applied. Teleconsciousness is thus not just about interpreting the medium, it is concerned with the education process and practice by which this is done. Teleconsciousness is education for demystification - demystifying not only the products of television but the curriculum as well. In facilitating an awareness of the ideological function of television - by way of which the myth and morality indicative of a particular world view are conveyed - teleconsciousness is concerned with doing much the same for the school curriculum too. The approach I suggest is that teleconsciousness be introduced only as part of a creative, inviting and integrated curriculum. This necessitates a look at those structural and other features which inhibit creative expression, developing a curriculum by which creativity and mindful, personally encouraging education can occur.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

A special thanks to my supervisor Douglas Young, for allowing me the madness of my methods, for his generous comment on and discussion of my work, as well as his remarkable encouragement throughout.

To my friends for all their patience and understanding.

The financial assistance of the Institute for Research Development towards this research is hereby acknowledged. Opinions expressed in this work, or conclusions arrived at, are those of the author and are not to be attributed to the Institute for Research Development.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1: Introducing the Medium

Drawing on my interest in both media and education, it is my intention to explore whether, and in what ways, education systems - described by Carl Rogers as "the most traditional, conservative, rigid, bureaucratic institution of our time" (1969:vii) - can respond both creatively and constructively to the challenges presented by the medium of television. This dissertation is focussed on facilitating an awareness of television as a producer of meaning. This awareness - or **teleconsciousness** as I have called it - is based on an understanding of television as a myth-maker *par excellence.* Teleconsciousness is thus primarily concerned with demystifying the role of television as myth-maker, encouraging insight into the workings of the medium and its promotion of particular constructions of the world. An integral facet of tele-consciousness is thus an awareness of the ideological function of television, of how it works, as John Fiske puts it:

> "to circulate some meanings rather than others, and to serve some social interests better than others" (1987:20).

In writing about television, I am interested not only in what is seen, but the manner in which programmes - be they documentaries, dramas, situational comedies (sitcoms), soaps or news - are constructed, and the myths they convey.

It has been said that the media in contemporary society have taken on what was largely the role of the church in interpreting and making sense of the world to the public. According to James Curran, Michael Gurevitch and Janet Wollacott:

> "The new priesthood of the media has supplanted the old as the principal ideological agent building consent for the social system" (1985:228).

With particular reference to television, Grant Noble writes that this medium has become the new religion, in that it stands, as "the dominant symbolic form of this day" (1983a:56). An arguably more illuminating reference to the role and function of television is provided by John Fiske and John Hartley, who describe the medium in terms of performing a 'bardic' role (1985:86). This alludes to the traditional mediators of language who composed out of the available linguistic resources of the culture;

> "a series of consciously structured messages which serve to communicate to the members of that culture a confirming, reinforcing view of themselves" (John Fiske and John Hartley 1985:86).

Kath Davies, Julienne Dickey and Teresa Stratford (1987) are of the view that the media both reflect and, consciously or otherwise, perpetuate a set of values which we are encouraged to believe is appropriate for us. To Gary Gumpert and Robert Cathcart, the mass media have become our "personal educators" (1986:474), providing us with both visual and auditory lessons about what happens when the 'correct' values are upheld. For Barrie McMahon and Robyn Quin, the media are systems of communication and as such, interact with society, reinforcing

values, developing new values, and helping to shape what they describe as "the society's understanding of itself and the larger world" (1986:1). If culture is seen as being concerned with the meanings we make of our social experience and social relations (John Fiske, 1987); with those common conceptions of reality, the choices, values and norms which serve as a means of binding people into a class or group, and determining to a greater or lesser extent how those people will relate to and interact with others (Open University, 1981), then television can perhaps best be seen as a mediator of myth - and by implication its associate morality - presenting a particular world view which provides for a sense of cultural identity and ostensible security. It is as a mediator of myth that television, along with other media, plays a significant role in what Len Masterman (1983) refers to as a process of influencing our perceptions in significant ways, defining what is important and shaping to a greater or lesser extent, the way in which events should be discussed.

Described as a complex system of images and beliefs which a society constructs in order to sustain and authenticate its sense of being, (Terence Hawkes, 1978), myths exist to provide people with what amounts to a simple code of morals and values, categorising what may appear contradictory and/or confusing into a narrative form which may be readily understood. Myths are thus sense-making mechanisms, or cultural fables, originating in a particular context as a product of specific

interests, accounting for an interpretation of the world and our place within it. Myths are thus a means of representing social knowledge. The manner in which the stories are told, as well as the moral considerations which emerge as such narratives unfold, can provide a revealing insight into the values and viewpoints of those responsible for the construction of particular myths, and the way they would like the world to be. Much the same could be said of the school curriculum. Jean Anyon writes, for example that if "school knowledge" (1981:32) as she calls it, were examined as a social product it would tell us a great deal about the society that produces and uses it, revealing which groups have power, and demonstrating that it is their view which is legitimised in the curriculum. Implicit in the mythology which forms an integral part of the process, content and structure of education, is its associate morality. Whether it be education or the mythology of television, the issue of myth can perhaps be more fully appreciated by reference to its concomitant morality.

My understanding of morality is informed by a reading of Marilyn French, who writes that morality is a system of priorities, a set of values by which we make judgements and which guide our behaviour and even our emotions, manifesting itself in the choices we make. Such choices in, for example, how we live, to what we devote our time, the friends we make, "and above all, the kind of person we want to be" (Marilyn French, 1985:16), are dependent on our sense of what it means

to be human; our way of seeing ourselves. Morality is by no means confined to the realm of the individual and the choices they make. Where morality extends to the public realm, it is, as Marilyn French notes, called politics. Here, the morality of a society can be seen for instance in the choices it makes with regard to how much it spends and on what, its mode of production and what it produces, the way it orders itself, and the kind of order deemed desirable. In this way, myths, and their moral domain, can be used to perpetuate assumptions about how things came to be, explaining why things are the way they are now, and providing pointers as to how the future might be anticipated or approached. In addition, the myths presented by whatever medium may explain how a group - itself a mythic entity - came into being, what constitutes membership of that group, and the objectives, problems, predicaments or potential of that group.

While the traditional bard translated and presented the central issues of the day into verse, the producers of television are engaged in much the same process, selecting and combining their constructed interpretations of the world into programme content. Roger Silverstone makes the point, for example, that every television programme, every item of news, drama and documentary:

> "microcosmically expresses the powerful ambiguities associated with the exercise of power, the expression of community and any claims for truth" (1983:137).

Even prime time dramatic productions which may well be intended to entertain, are as James Chesebro (1986) notes, constructed to convey messages to viewers. In this way, producers formulate and portray certain values as more desirable than others. Television thus plays a role in interpreting, framing and classifying the world for us, presenting a particular view of the world and the morality by which that construct is sustained.

In writing about the development of a teleconscious curriculum, I will focus on a broad spectrum of televisual content and not on any programme type. Such an approach sees television in terms of what Len Masterman so aptly describes as:

> "a major source of most people's information about the world" (1980:13).

Not only does television serve as a medium of information about issues, events and concerns which have a direct bearing on viewers themselves, it can also be seen as a provider of the folklore of the day. Television is thus not only bardic but also folkloric. Grant Noble (1983b) maintains that folklore can be seen in the medium showing examples of what is considered appropriate behaviour in social settings beyond the direct experience of viewers. The folklore of television is said, in addition, to expose viewers to people, places and events from the wider society. Television news is but one example of the medium as a producer of folklore. In framing the context in which "important", "relevant" and newsworthy issues are identified (Stephen Brookfield, 1980:158), the news

It is factors such as these which should serve as a caution to us seeing the production processes of television as a massive conspiracy on the part of producers. What appears on screen has a large economic component and a cautiousness as Gloria Steinem (1988) puts it, in fear and avoidance of controversy so as to avoid offending either advertisers or viewers. In addition to economics, numerous industrial, professional and organisational constraints have a bearing on what appears on screen. In developing an understanding of television, it is factors such as these which must be taken into account. To ignore them is to deprive one of important insight into the workings of the medium and the processes by which the products of television reach the screen.

What is of particular interest to me in the development of a teleconscious curriculum concerns that which is selected for exposure and that which is not, how it is edited and constructed for presentation, and by whom. All this, as Kath Davies, Julienne Dickey and Teresa Stratford point out, is of paramount importance

"in structuring (and limiting) our perceptions" (1987:2). Those engaged in the construction of televisual content - much the same way as curriculum planners - can be likened to gatekeepers. It is these people who, as Lynne Spender writes, hold decision making positions in our society and are responsible for selecting the information and ideas that will be allowed to pass through the gates:

"and incorporated into our culture" (1983:6).

The ability to determine what will appear within a form or medium of information, be it television, radio or print,

> "allows considerable influence on the social reality" (Lynne Spender, 1983:17).

While the process of gatekeeping has a significant role to play in determining the content of what appears in a particular medium, I think it necessary to note that I do not see the media as deterministic. The view that media participation is a two way event, that people are active consumers of the products of media:

> "bringing to bear attitudes and values formed also by other institutions as well as their own intelligence and judgement" (Kath Davies, Julienne Dickey and Teresa Stratford, 1987:2),

is one which I share. With regard to television, Elihu Katz and Tamar Liebes (1986) write that viewers see programmes and not wallpaper, with the authors suggesting that programmes do not impose themselves unequivocally on passive viewers. Televiewing is thus a process of negotiation between viewers and what is screened. I would agree therefore with Manuel Alvorado, Robin Gutch and Tana Wollen (1987) that while the media - and this includes education - may be massive, they are not massively determining. The important factor to consider, therefore, is the manner in which individuals interpret their experience of what they see. It has been stated that the better we understand the media and the way they operate:

> "the more control we will have over them and ourselves and the better able we will be to utilize to our advantage the resources they offer" (Fredric Rissover and David Birch, 1977:11).

For Julienne Dickey, the more conscious we become of how the images of media are created and what their purpose is intended to be, the more we can choose to reject their messages:

> "We can raise the subliminal to the light of inspection so that it no longer enslaves us" (in Kath Davies, Julienne Dickey and Teresa Stratford (eds) 1987:77).

Teleconsciousness can thus be seen as a process of de-mythologysing the medium, revealing the selective practices by which images reach the screen. For Len Masterman, it is the process of demythologysing which will, as he puts it:

> "emphasize the constructed nature of the representations projected, and make explicit their ideological function" (1980:9).

It is my belief that this explicative process should in no way be confined to the medium of television itself. If indeed it is to have any significant impact in terms of learning, teleconsciousness should be concerned with an exploration of education too. In this way, the focus would be on aspects of the curriculum such as what is learned, the manner in which it is taught, who prescribes what is taught, the interests served by the curriculum content on offer, and the institutional, as well as socio-political context in which education occurs. Demythologysing education implies recognition that all teaching is, as Len Masterman puts it, both a social and political activity, with all educational practice proceeding from assumptions about how people ought to relate to each other (1980:76). Any education system must, by implication, involve the inculcation of a set of values and beliefs about the world (Dennis Altman, 1981) and it has been said that anyone defining

educational objectives or designing educational systems is, at the same time, describing their own model of the 'ideal' person and the 'ideal' society (Barrie Hopson, and Mike Scally, 1981). According to the conventional system of education, the nature of the individual is seen as being such they cannot be trusted and must be guided, instructed, rewarded, punished and controlled by those considered wiser or of higher status (Carl Rogers, 1978). In such a system, the lecture is viewed as the most effective means of conveying what amounts to a predetermined body of 'acceptable' knowledge to those regarded as deficient, and in need of such knowledge; and examinations, a measure of how efficiently this transmission occurs. The role of the teacher in such a system becomes what A.J. Rosie describes as a management task:

> "the management of goals and outcomes (1979:321).

Such education is thus geared to conformity, obedience and meritocracy. In contrast, schools that encourage individual development and creative expression have entirely different approaches in both practice and mind. Barrie Hopson and Mike Scally are of the view that schools which allow participation and dialogue, which give responsibility and share decision making, and which avoid autocracy and rigid authoritarianism:

> "are doing far more than paying lip-service to preparing students for citizenship in a democracy" (1981:242).

Anyone who believes that education can in any way be dis-interested, neutral and value free, could well be described as captive to what Maxine Greene refers to as "the spurious ideal

of neutrality" (1983:130), where values are set aside and social consequences ignored. Much the same can be said of the very process of research itself, which despite any pretensions of neutrality or adherence to supposedly pure and objective methods of describing the world, can in no way be value free. My reasons for such a view will be explored in greater detail in the chapter that follows.

My objectives in writing this disertation were:

* to explore my understanding of the medium of television and to focus on the implications this has for education;

* to suggest a framework for interpreting television readily accessible to learners; and

* to discuss the creative curriculum within which an appreciation of television should occur.

Chapter 2: The Construction of Research

The construction of research bears more than a passing resemblance to the process by which television programmes are made. The manner in which a particular field of study is approached and explored is similar in many respects to the work of, for instance, the writer, producer, editor, or those responsible for make-up, or the musical score. Research, and the material which appears on screen, are the products of selective construction. They are not merely found or discovered: they are made. In selecting that which is to be included, and consciously or otherwise ignored, both the researcher and producers of television cannot but be informed by a particular world view. It is this, as I see it, which has a direct bearing on the process by which both research and televisual construction is done. It is this perspective which also lends substance to the myths by which both research and television are told.

My approach to research is based on the notion that any act of research is a process of mediation by which the researcher does not simply record, but interprets and selectively constructs, in making sense of, and representing what is seen. The researcher is thus not like the narrator in Christopher Isherwood's *Berlin Diary*, the camera, shutter open, simply recording, but is more like the reporter who sets out to

construct a particular story for the network news. I thus share Liz Stanley and Sue Wise's view that all research necessarily comes to us through the active and central involvement of researchers who interpret and construct what's going on. According to them:

> "There's no other way to 'do' either research or life" (1983:196).

In addition, research cannot be separated from the socio-political environment in which it occurs. This view is based on the notion that any representation of the world, or aspect of society, is by no means simply a description of its 'real' nature. As John Sharp puts it:

> "each representation is a political statement which includes the assumptions and intentions of the people who make it" (1988a:2).

In presenting this view, I believe that the world we apprehend and live in is structured by our consciousness (Douglas Sloan, 1983), and that 'reality' is "interpreted experience" (Maxine Greene, 1983:129), rather than an object out-there to be quantifiably observed. My ideas in this regard are informed by a reading for one, of personal construct theory. According to this psychological approach - developed initially by George Kelly - one cannot directly apprehend or determine reality:

> "We can only place kinds of interpretations upon it which enable us to relate to it" (George Kelly, in Don Bannister, 1979:31).

George Kelly maintains that people make sense of and cope with events by devising reference axes, called constructs. These permit the individual to put the events they encounter into some kind of perspective (in Brendan Maher (ed), 1969).

Everyone thus sees the world through their own personal construct system, and we differ from others in how we perceive of and interpret a situation, as well as in, for example, what we consider important about it, and what we consider its implications to be (Don Bannister and Fay Fransella, 1971). In this sense, constructs are not merely ways of labelling the world:

> "they are ways of trying to understand and anticipate it" (Don Bannister and Fay Fransella, 1971:27).

Whatever the world might be, we can, as Fred Jandt and James Darsey put it:

> "only come to grips with it by placing one's own interpretation on what one sees" (1981:16).

From a personal construct perspective, each of us lives in what is thus an ultimately unique world:

> "because it is uniquely interpreted and thereby uniquely experienced" (Don Bannister and Fay Fransella, 1971:22).

This has a bearing not only with regard to research, but to televiewing as well. Interpreting television, viewers bring their particular construction of the world to what is seen. The experience of television is thus unique to each viewer. To regard the medium of television as deterministically intrusive, is to ignore the interpretive interaction between medium and viewer, and to accord television a power it simply cannot have on its own. In the making of television, it is the constructed experience of producers, directors, and others involved, which all, to a greater or lesser extent, have a connection with what is made. With regard to research, it has been noted that our

models of inquiry, of science-making, are also models of reality:

> "they reflect how we conceptualize what is, what is to be known, and how it is to be known. The beliefs we hold about the nature of reality and of human beings are ways in which we organise and make meaning out of experience and information: beliefs too, are ways of knowing" (Liz Stanley and Sue Wise, 1983:196).

There is thus no absolutely neutral or disinterested way of making sense of experience, our experience being shaped by how we interpret the world. A noteworthy feature of both research and television is language, which I see as one of the most significant means by which such interpretations are made.

Casey Miller and Kate Swift (1977) maintain that language enables us to interpret and organise the world we experience through our senses, and in so doing, provides structure and meaning to what they say, would otherwise be a jumble of impressions. At the same time as providing the principal means of realising our social relations and organising our encounters, language is said to provide us with the most significant sense of our everyday world (Martin Montgomery, 1986). For Shearon Lowery and Melvin De Fleur:

> "Language is a system of labels for aspects of reality, and the way in which we experience that reality depends on the way in which we divide it up, establish cultural conventions of meaning, and use those conventions to interpret the world around us" (1988:26).

Martin Montgomery writes that in apprehending, comprehending and representing the world, we inevitably draw upon linguistic

formulations which help to select, arrange, organise and evaluate experience:

> "even when we are least conscious of it doing so" (1986:176).

The importance of language is that it invariably makes sense of the world in a particular way. While we may indeed share the constructions we place on the world with others, our interpretation of experience is ultimately unique. Even if we accept that 'reality' can exist outside of language:

> "it is constantly mediated by and through language" (Stuart Hall, 1984:131).

It is my view that social phenomena exist as they do precisely as a result of their articulation, or interpretation in a particular way. Detachment is thus simply impossible. The implications of this for research, like the products of television, are that they will always be informed by the experience of those responsible for their construction. No research or television can thus be anything but biased. According to Christine Griffin:

> "All research workers, regardless of the techniques or theoretical analyses they employ, bring their own set of assumptions and expectations to a project" (1986:187).

Applying equally, I believe, to those involved in both research and television, is the view that all human beings have a biased and limited view of the world:

> "biased in that it begins with self, and limited in that it is restrained by experience" (Dale Spender, 1985:10).

My approach to research is thus distinct from the positivist assumption that 'objectivity' - itself a mythic construct - can

be somehow obtained by a segration of subject and object, and of fact from value. I share Celia Kitzinger's view that there is no single or 'correct' account of any social phenomenon which will stand revealed:

> "once we have peeled away the layers of prejudice, special pleading and personal bias that form a veil between us and the 'facts'" (1986:152).

Rejected, therefore, is the view that as so-called "private individuals", we can speculate all we want, but when speaking as "scientists":

> "we must put aside our intuitions, political biases, personal hunches and aesthetic preferences and talk only about the data" (Jonathan Freedman, 1985:144).

I do not believe that a split between the 'personal' and 'professional'; between subject (the researcher, or those involved with construction on TV), and object (in that which is reported or observed), is possible. The personal is the professional, and what is looked at, only tangible by way of construction and the interpretations placed on what is seen. The researcher will invariably be part of the social environment they explore. In approaching research I, like Fred Jandt and James Darsey, do not see myself as a dispassionate explainer of a phenomenon. I also make no claim to disinterestedness, and like the authors mentioned above:

> "rather than finding it an impediment to valuable and disciplined inquiry, find involvement to be the only ethical perspective from which criticism can take place" (1981:12).

This dissertation is thus an account of my experience, arising from my constructive participation in the process research - what I write being a representation of what I have construed.

In addition to language and constructs, there are numerous other factors which have a bearing on the process by which research takes shape. Margrit Eichler (1988), for instance, cites Karen Messing, who points to a number of stages during which the ideology and background of the researcher can influence research. These include: the selection of 'scientists' to conduct research; the access of researchers to facilities deemed necessary for that research; the choice of research topic itself; and the methods of observation used. Another factor to consider concerns the rsearch which is published, and how it is popularised. In much the same way that a screening process determines what will be allowed to appear on television, publishing,

> "is the gate through which material has been obliged to pass in order to qualify for inclusion into our written records" (Lynne Spender, 1983:13).

Such gatekeeping determines what is allowed into the field of officially sanctioned knowledge, and should be seen in the context of choices being made. What needs to be looked at, is what is accepted, what is rejected, and why. I believe that there is a need to expose the selective manner in which such gatekeeping occurs, revealing whose viewpoints and values are thereby upheld, as well as what is excluded, and thereby denied. Lynne Spender notes that it makes a great deal of sense to the group who act as the decision makers in any society, to have gatekeeping privileges over at least one form of communication. According to her:

> "The ability to determine what will appear within that form, whether it is print, television, radio or any other, allows considerable influence over the social reality" (1983:16-17).

The selection process of publishing is by no means neutral or value free. Like that of television, it is designed, I believe, to structure and perpetuate myth.

Like researchers and publishers, those invovled in the production process of television, are engaged in the selective construction of social knowledge. What is shown, will always emerge from and convey an interpretation of the world that reflects, to a greater or lesser extent, the myths and morality of those responsible for its construction. In this sense, television could well be described as a medium which is used to reinforce the value system of the dominant culture (Stephen Brookfield, 1986). Be it as myth-maker, provided of folklore or bard, all television teaches; the "lessons" of the medium always stemming from a socio-politically identifiable point and serving the interests of the groups around that point by, as John Fiske writes:

> "making their sense of the world appear *common* sense" (1987:42).

Much the same could be said of education itself. In much the same way that the products of media (including research) are indicative of the attitudes, values and concerns of those responsible for their construction, so too is education reflective of the world view, myths and morality of those whose interests it is intended to serve. I share Dale Spender's view

that for far too long, too many people have been prepared to accept that education is both neutral and benign;

> "that it is a 'good thing', and the more one gets the better off one will be" (1982:1).

Associated with this, is the notion that education is apolitical, that it can somehow be seen as being separate from the socio-political context in which it occurs. Len Masterman notes that it is one of our most cherished traditional percepts that education as it is commonly practised "is apolitical, and that its 'proper purposes', are in danger of subversion of those who are 'politically motivated'" (1980:180). In much the same way, there is a tendency to label political, research which acknowledges a commitment to working for change. Intended as an expression of disparagement or disdain, accusations of advocacy or subjective political bias, are political statements themselves.

If, as Lynne Spender notes, it is possible to establish a chosen medium of communication as an ostensibly neutral one, the medium itself can serve as an agent of social control:

> "By convincing people that it is impartial and objective, its message is interpreted as the result of neutral decision-making and there need be little awareness of a connection between the interests of the decision-makers and the general quality and way of life of the society" (1983:17).

An attack on research for political bias is thus frequently nothing more than a means to reinforcing the mythology of objectivity, and what John Docker describes as the "profoundly rationalist", and "deeply puritanic" (1983:5) notion that the

only meaningful way of gaining insight into what is 'real', is by rational means. In the educational sphere, the objectification to which Lynne Spender refers, can be seen in what Ira Shor describes as the "falsely neutral curricula", which train students to observe things without judging, to see the world from the official consensus and to carry out orders without questioning, as if the given society is fixed and finite (in Paulo Freire and Ira Shor, 1987:12). If the medium of television (or research for that matter), can be made out to be impartial, and an objective conveyer of what is true, its myths will likely be taken as real. For Maxine Greene, the danger in all this lies in people becoming accommodated to the idea of an objectively existent reality, defined by others - "usually official others" (1983:130) - and taking that reality for granted. Mystified, students are readily susceptible to the routinized conformity and acquiescent indifference which Ellen Langer refers to as "mindlessness" (in Lesley Dormen and Peter Edidin, 1989:48). This is similar in many respects to what Maxine Greene describes as a state of "learned ignorance" (1983:134), affecting not only students, but teachers too. This is evident in those teachers, too many of whom have internalized the existing ideology, asking themselves few questions, and seldom thinking what they are doing (Maxine Greene, 1983).

Ellen Langer and Alison Piper (1988) maintain that a mindless response is one which is made without choice or awareness that

a situation could be understood differently. Mindlessness involves a denial of the perceptions and promptings of our own minds and individual selves, with people relying on rigid distinctions or familiarity, with no awareness of other ways in which an object, person, event or idea might exist, or be seen (Ellen Langer, in Lesley Dormen and Peter Edidin, 1989). The deleterious effects of perceptual rigidity such as this are far reaching indeed, and have a bearing not only on individuals themselves, but the manner in which they perceive of, interpret, and interact with others. One of the clearest manifestations of mindlessness is prejudice. Don Bannister and Fay Fransella write that in our search for the ultimate psychological foundations of prejudice;

> "we might look to our tendency to see our interpretations of the world as facts of the reality out there rather than interpretations" (1971:115).

What concerns me as an educator is that the curriculum - that composite term used to describe what I see as the interconnected parts of the educational whole, including the structures, methods, syllabus content, political myth and style - may well be contributing to mindlessness, and uncreative, prejudicial thought.

In my reference to creativity, I am suggesting that it be seen, not as the product of, or means to artistic genius, or, as Lesley Dormen and Peter Edidin put it;

> "the property of the elect" (1989:50).

In my view, creativity is something which is potentially accessible to all. For Neil McAleer, creativity is;

> "a passionate, exciting and challenging effort to make just the right connection amid the buffeting chaos of everyday reality" (1989:44).

Creativity in this sense is concerned with the manner in which people deal in a personally meaningful and constructive way, with the challenges of life. It is, as Ruth Richards puts it:

> "the very essence of human survival" (in Lesley Dormen and Peter Edidin, 1989:48).

Creativity thus stands in stark contrast to the mindlessness and associate narrow-, if not totally closed-, mindedness to which I have referred. According to Ellen Langer, creativity involves the utilization of our affective, responsive, perceptive faculties:

> "avoiding rigid, reflexive behaviour in favour of a more improvisational and intuitive response to life" (in Lesley Dormen and Peter Edidin, 1989:50).

Those she maintains, who can free themselves of mindsets, play with perspective and context, and focus on process rather than outcome, are likely to be creative, whether they are scientists, artists or cooks. The educational implications of this are far-reaching indeed. If we agree that education should be concerned with encouraging creative expression, the curriculum which shows this, should be geared towards the intuitive, the insightful, the spontaneous and flexible process by which significant learning occurs. If we look to what I de V Heyns describes as an open minded, questioning, personally meaningful education:

> "we need increasingly to focus on independent thinking, problem solving and the role of the individual in society" (in *The Argus*, October 24, 1989:4).

With its emphasis on demystification, and appreciation of the need for an integrated use of all senses, by way of intuitive insight and association, teleconsciousness presents what I see as an imaginative challenge to those for whom the values of creative expresison are held as being centrally significant in the educational realm. Interpreting television is thus not just a means to approaching the medium. It is not merely concerned with a focus on content or development of perceptual skill. Teleconsciousness arises from a particular way of construing the world. This has a direct bearing on the school curriculum in terms of both content and the manner in which learning occurs. Issues such as these will be looked at in greater detail in chapter three.

In concluding this section, I think it important to affirm my belief that my role as researcher is one of offering not only a theoretical perspective, but pragmatic value as well. I share Tony Morphet's view that however sophisticated in design, however far reaching and impressive the contribution to knowledge research might be;

> "its purpose is always towards a practical end beyond itself" (1983:93).

Perhaps the most important means to assessing the value of this research, is the extent to which it stimulates an informed interest, and awareness of the pragmatic potential which a

teleconscious approach to education presents. It is this, in the main, towards which my research is geared.

Chapter 3:

Creativity and the Teleconscious Curriculum

The workings of television are not far removed from those of the school curriculum. Both are involved in the mediation of myth. Douglas Young writes that the curriculum, in explicit, and 'hidden' forms:

> "is surely the totality of all classroom activity" (1987:166).

According to this view, the curriculum shapes ideologically, intellectually and socially what students and teachers actually do in what Douglas Young describes as their:

> "ritualistic adherence to the syllabuses" (1987:166).

I would take this somewhat further to suggest that the curriculum comprises the interconnected totality of the educational experience at school. This includes both what happens inside the classroom, as well as those other areas of schooling, in which the presentation - both explicit or otherwise - of myth occurs. The structure and content of what are frequently referred to as extra-curricula activities, uniforms, assemblies and sport, could thus also be seen as an integral part of the curriculum. My view of curriculum is thus distinct from those who regard the curriculum as revolving solely around syllabus content, teaching method and evaluation. Curriculum to me then, is more than that which Michael Ashley (1983) describes as the planned learning experiences to which students are exposed. According to Lawrence Stenhouse:

> "It involves both content and method, and in its widest application takes account of the problem of implementation in the institutions of the educational system" (in Douglas Young, 1987:166).

In one respect, the curriculum is concerned with content, the syllabus and textbooks by which this content is conveyed. In this, we can already detect that the content of education is by no means neutral or value-free, but has been selected and structured to support the mythology of those whose needs it is intended to satisfy. School textbooks, for instance, have been described as expressive of the ideologies of the dominant groups in society, legitimating some activities, ideas and groups, and not others (Jean Anyon, 1981). Textbooks, like the products of other media, are the outcome of a process of selective construction, and are thus invariably partial. In study of South African history textbooks, Hanneke du Preez found, for example, that racial division in South Africa is treated as an indisputable fact. Another feature was that students were encouraged to accept unquestioning loyalty to the state (*Weekend Argus*, May 28, 1983). According to Professor Basil Le Cordeur, history in South Africa has been harnessed primarily in the interests of Afrikaner Nationalism and of white supremacy;

> "in efforts to legitimise and stabilize the existing social and political order" (*The Argus*, August 7, 1986:17).

In similar fashion, Leonard Thompson writes that Afrikaner leaders have skilfully manipulated the facts of history to suit and to serve their political ends (*Sunday Star*, December 28, 1986; see also Leonard Thompson, 1985). The means by which

history is used to lend credence to, by forming part of the myths surrounding a particular world view, is also evident in the androcentricity - or male-centredness - by which that mythic construct called history is biased. In addition to content, the curriculum can be looked at and demystified in terms of its structures and values by which the content or substance is communicated at school. John Reynolds and Malcolm Skilbeck write that the school may be thought of as an institution engaged in complex transactions with its environment, transactions:

> "which involve exchanges of ideas, resources and people through an elaborate criss-crossing network of communication systems" (1976:102).

In line with this view, they suggest that a useful way of approaching the curriculum is to think of it as a mediation or a bridge between the learner's experience and the processes, forms and substance of contemporary culture.

Edgar Maurice (1983) writes that educational systems are no more than a mirror of the political and social systems which create them and which they serve or subserve. For some theorists, particularly those within the Marxist paradigm, the structural features of education are seen as corresponding with the social relations indicative of capitalist production. According to this view, schools replicate the hierarchical division of labour, and mirror conditions found in the work place, by their insistence on the recognition of authority, discipline, obedience, and punctuality. Schools are thus seen

as places where students are trained for their place in the economic structure. Another view of curriculum, as serving particular means, is presented by Eva Figes, who writes that when educationalists assume that women and men are destined for very different roles in the world;

> "then they can be expected to devise the best system for helping male supremacy to come true" (in Dale Spender, 1985:103).

Norman Atkinson (1983) discusses four interconnected areas of the curriculum which, I believe, give substance to my view that the curriculum is an educational encapsulation of societal myth. The areas to which he refers are:

- the political: In this sense, the curriculum serves to initiate students into acceptable norms of behaviour in society, while attempting to uphold the existing political and social order,
- the economic: The curriculum works economically by introducing students to the skills and attitudes demanded by the economic structure of society. In addition, it works socially,
- the social: preparing students for roles and responsibilities in society, and
- the cultural: concerned with transmitting traditional values, attitudes and skills to give stability to society.

The curriculum is thus structured to facilitate the transmission of societal myth and the morals with which this goes. To demystify this process requires insight into that complex of factors by which the curriculum is structured. Understanding the curriculum is thus similar in many respects to interpreting the products and their selective construction for television. In discussing what I regard to be but some of the central features of a restrictive, mindless, uncreative and coercive curriculum, it is my intention to establish a point of reference by which to contrast and compare, as well as to highlight the fact that to regard curriculum innovation merely as a matter of syllabus reform, is not only wholly inadequate, but pragmatically inane. In considering curriculum innovation, one should bear in mind that the curriculum is, as John Nisbet puts it:

> "concerned also with method, aims, and the approach to learning" (1983:150).

With particular regard to media, Len Masterman writes that the introduction of television studies will serve little purpose if taught in the same way as other school subjects;

> "since the essential messages passed to students will remain the same as they always were" (1980:26).

In developing a teleconscious curriculum, I am concerned with not only the process of interpreting television, but the manner, and values, by which this is done. Teleconsciousness thus not only responds to the pervasiveness of television, but is concerned with doing so in an educationally constructive, and apposite way.

Education, as we know it, is based on the notion of print primacy, with the assumption that print is the intellectually superior medium. This presumption is directly responsible for 'literacy' being seen as revolving around the acquisition of those skills necessary for making sense of the written word, and reading, the comprehension of print. For many people, writes Patricia Marks Greenfield:

> "print is still the hallmark of education and the standard against which all other media tend to be measured" (1984:5).

Lynne Spender notes that while other societies kept their culture alive through oral tradition, and other forms of non-verbal expression, we have adopted the printed word;

> "and invested it with the status of recorder of our civilisation and conveyer of our cultural truths" (1983:15).

With a distinct bias towards print as the dominant medium, it is by no means surprising that the curriculum would be structured around print, and concern itself with promoting those skills deemed necessary for participation in a print-based culture. Priscilla Norton (1985) writes that education rests squarely on the definition of literacy as the acquisition of skills and facts needed for participation in a print-dominant society. Along with writing and print, is an emphasis on what Edmund Carpenter describes as "an analytic mode of thinking" (1986:353), and lineality, with spatial awareness and non-verbal expression frequently undervalued or ignored.

In print dominant societies, school systems are usually structured to divide people into groups based on how well the individual can read; reading thus used as a mark of one's competence. As Joshua Meyrowitz puts it;

> "How well one reads is used as a guide to one's intelligence and one's capacity for understanding new ideas" (1985:78).

One of the clearest manifestations of print based convention, is the hierarchical gradation and compartmentalisation of both people and knowledge, in a system devoted to product, to outcome and control. On this basis, students are divided into hierarchically structured groups and presented with curriculum content considered appropriate to their level of print literate (euphemistically called intellectual development). With its emphasis on conformity, and associate intolerance of questioning and dissent, a conventional, lecture-based, hierarchically structured curriculum, has as its objective, the imparting by teachers, and examinable acquisition by students of a predetermined body of knowledge which they are instructed to know. In such a system, classroom activity is typified by authoritarian rule, with a belief that students are governed best by being kept in what Carl Rogers describes as:

> "an intermittent or constant state of fear" (1978:70).

In addition to the prospect of punitive sanction is the tension of competitive pressure, and the threat of failure. This is fostered in part by the constant measuring of people against others in what James Hemming describes as a "meritocracy struggle" (1980:13). An example of such measurement is the

system of evaluation by examination. Len Masterman maintains that examinations not only divide and disseminate,

> "they create and institutionalise failure (1980:31).

The reason for this is that important qualities such as self-understanding, aesthetic and social sensitivity, intellectual curiosity and creativity, that ought to be central to any meaningful education:

> "get pushed to the fringes because they are not conventionally examinable and wither away when they are measured not in personal terms, but against other people's or a mythical norm" (Len Masterman, 1980:31).

Such discrimination, and aethetic disdain, is evident too in what Dale Spender describes as:

> "the astonishing convenience of the concept of 'intelligence' in a hierarchical society" (1980:30).

It is this, she maintains, which serves as:

> "the ultimate justification for stratification, the 'inherent' and 'natural' qualities over which human beings supposedly have no control and which explain inequality more sophisticatedly than the 'crude' class, ethnicity or sex" (1983:30).

Equally damning is Marilyn French (1985), who writes that the IQ test and pseudo science behind it enable one to label others inferior without the appearance of prejudice. In a system of measurement, personal confidence is frequently undermined, with students inhibited from risk-taking, experimentation and the expression of those values which are an essential part of the desire to explore.

Education need not be anything like the way I've described. What exists, represents a construction, a reflection of a

particular world view, and its manifestation in the educational realm. It is by no means inevitable that education be practised in this way, and in looking to teleconsciousness, I believe it imperative that an appropriate learning environment for interpreting television be considered too. Education, as I see it, should be inviting and entertaining rather than alienating. Students accustomed to the entertainment of television may well be switched off to unimaginative classroom fare. The point has been made that the entertainment factor of television, is one factor which enhances the educative potential of the medium (Anthony Bates, 1983). I see no reason why this should not also apply to the learning experience of students at school. Why indeed should learning not be fun? *Los Angeles Times* Education writer, Elaine Woo, reports that students see the enlivening of lessons in the most unexpected ways as a talent the best teachers have. She cites the example of Jaime Escalante - "acknowledged by peers as a virtuoso among teachers" - who is, "the ultimate performer in class", telling jokes, rendering impressions and using all sorts of props to make the learning of mathematics fun (*Los Angeles Times*, July 29, 1988). According to Jaime Escalante:

> "A good teacher has to attract kids, make their life easy not complicated. [So] I entertain them. At the same time, I get 100% out of them" (*Los Angeles Times*, July 29, 1988).

Chemistry teacher, Roland Ganges, is another who, as Elaine Woo puts it:

> "has snared his students' attention by using dramatic techniques."

For Roland Ganges:

> "the most important thing is to create an atmosphere in which students want to participate" (*Los Angeles Times*, July 29, 1988:18).

Creative teaching is part of an approach to education which facilitates learning by entertaining, by inviting students to participate and explore. Entertainment is one aspect, however, of an invitational style. In creating an atmosphere in which there exists a tangible eagerness to learn, one can look to not only the dramatic, attention drawing role which the teacher can play, but the classroom environment in which learning occurs. The arrangement of furniture, as well as aspects of aesthetic appeal, are but two additional factors which might have a bearing on whether the classroom is seen as inviting, or viewed as an alienating bore. John Reynolds and Malcolm Skilbeck (1976) maintain that to be defensible educationally, the curriculum must comprise mediating experiences which are meaningful to the learner and significantly stimulating of further growth. Not only should those experiences be meaningful to the learner, it is my belief that they should be mediated in a meaningful way. One could go so far as to say that it is the very process of mediation which will have a distinct bearing on just how meaningful the mediating experiences are perceived to be. With regard to the "psychological environment" of learning, Carl Rogers writes that if the creation of an atmosphere of acceptance, understanding, and respect is the most effective basis for facilitating that learning called therapy:

> "might it not be the basis for the learning which is called education" (1984:384).

The extent to which the teacher is concerned with facilitating the kind of inviting atmosphere to which Carl Rogers refers, will, I believe, be evident in just how comfortable students are. To ignore this aspect of the curriculum is to be an accessory to education for alienation.

An uninviting curriculum is one which is likely to alienate, primarily because curiosity is ignored. One of the reasons for the antipathy of many students towards the curriculum may well be that personal curiosity - described by James Hemming as "the cutting edge of the mind" (1980:13) - is not encouraged, and in some cases, even disdained. In addition, it has been noted that much of the material with which students are faced is meaningless, with education frequently being wrapped in an arduous endeavour to learn that which, as Carl Rogers notes, has no "personal meaning" (1969:4). By drawing on the interest of students in television, teleconsciousness presents what I see as pragmatic affirmation that the lived world of students can well form part of the basis for classroom learning. An approach to learning such as this, is based on the notion that the school, as George Kelly writes,

> "cannot permit itself to take the position that experience, instead of being a prerogative of all human life, is to be doled out in calculated amounts by the educational establishment" (in Don Bannister and Fay Fransella, 1971:96).

This has a bearing not only with regard to the manner in which experience is drawn into becoming an integral part of the

curriculum, but also in terms of how knowledge is structured for mediation. With its emphasis on invitational, personally stimulating learning, teleconsciousness is concerned too with integration in contrast to segregation and gradation.

In contrast to print, the medium of television does not discriminate in terms of access to the images it conveys. With its readily accessible, non-graded presentation of information, television renders the hierarchical structure of conventional education anachronistic, its presumption as sole imparter of knowledge, obsolete. In light of a medium like television, by which so many are in a position to interact with so much, the developmental theories of people like Jean Piaget, on which much in the way of educational structure is based, may well necessitate thorough review or even radical change. Integration, in contrast to segregation, is concerned too with what Maxine Greene (1983) describes as the kind of specialization that fragments the world and compartmentalizes vision. This can be seen, for example, in the subject divisions characteristic of school. Maxine Greene (1983) maintains that what this does is to make it increasingly difficult to envisage the overlaps, the connections,

> "the consequences that make all the difference" (1983:131).

Fragmentary thinking thus works against an appreciation of the interconnectedness between things. In contrast, a creative approach, concerned as it is with integration, makes for an understanding of the interconnections, the associations by

which all phenomena cohere. It is such an approach which makes for an understanding of the world, a vision which is whole.

In contrast to fragmentary segmentation of both knowledge and mind, the creative curriculum is one by which integration is favoured. The emphasis of such an approach would be on flexible, fluent thinking, on imagination and intuition, in contrast to obsequious, regurgitative, and mindless learning. James Gallagher (1975) maintains that in order to stimulate creativity, one should focus on fluency. The idea is to have students, by way of brainstorming for example, give as abundant an array of responses as they can to a particular issue or theme. It is during this process that an integration, combining, adding to and evalution of the ideas which emerge is done. The emphasis here is on process rather than outcome, on group work and interpersonal co-operation. Evaluation is also based on reflective assessment, in contrast to competitive numerical right/wrong grading. In moving from a 'right-answer' method of learning, a creative approach encourages risk taking and a confidence in the intuitive and inquiring. Marilyn French writes that intuition, which she describes as "an extremely subtle form of perception" (1985:502), does not find favour in a conventional, mindless curriculum precisely because it is inaccessible to coercion and control. The creative curriculum is one which encourages confidence in flexibility rather than rigidity, to facilitate a willingness to take risks, to experiment and explore.

The suggestions I've sketched should be seen not as prescriptive, but as a stimulus to reflection, a means to pragmatic application. In considering curriculum innovation, teachers have a responsibility to look not only at content, but their methods and approaches as well. The implementation of a teleconscious curriculum could thus be a learning experience for the teacher too. In concluding this section, an extract by Dale Spender which most eloquently expresses what I have foregrounded as one my central themes. According to Dale Spender, it is not preordained that schools and education should be arranged in their present form with their deeply entrenched hierarchical structures and their primary role of separating those who qualify from those who do not:

> "Nor is it mandatory that schools and education should function on the premise that the inequalities which abound in society are the consequences of different inherent aptitudes (which are of course simply measured by the agents of education in 'neutral' fashion). It is not inevitable that schools should accept inequality as something which 'naturally unfolds' rather than divisions which have been cultivated. We can see how schools help to create these inequalities and we can modify their practices. Schools **could** serve to challenge some of the existing premises, and education **could** be a powerful force for social change and for the construction of a more egalitarian society" (1982:88).

Teleconsciousness, with its emphasis on education for demystification, is directly concerned with addressing the implications of issues such as these.

Chapter 4:

Interpreting Television

Interpreting television, a term that I prefer to notions such as reading the medium, or television literacy, is concerned with facilitating critical awareness of the medium, by exposing students to the production process by which the ingredients of television are selected and packaged for transmission on screen. Television does not simply appear, it is made. An integral part of the interpreting process involves thus the ability to ascertain, as far as possible, whose view of the world is, as John Fiske puts it, "implicitly or explicitly, obviously or subtly" (1987:42) inscribed within the messages of the medium. One of the reasons I have purposefully avoided the plethora of terms such as reading the medium, television literacy, discourses and "language of appreciation" (John Fiske and John Hartley, 1985:14), is because of their association with print-based literacy and the tools of literary analysis. John Fiske and John Hartley maintain that viewing television content in terms of literary texts, is not only "doomed to failure" (1985:15), it is likely to result in a negative evaluation of the medium, based as it is on its inability to do a job for which it is unsuited. It is doubtful whether established traditions of literary analysis - which, as David Barrat (1986) points out, tend to regard popular culture as inferior - can be applied to television, which like the bard, is an essentially oral mediator of popular culture. In

addition, notions of television literacy are far too closely linked to the rational, analytic attainment of skills, effectively downplaying or consciously ignoring the exploration of feelings and sensations, an integral part of interpretation which I see as having the expressive potential of a more holistic approach. Another factor to consider is whether one would want to subject students to the potentially alienating experience of approaching television by way of those terms which are frequently associated with uncreative and restrictive teaching in an educational environment regarded as meaningless and boring. A further reservation I have about literary-based methods of analysis is that they tend to be narrowly focussed on 'texts', with little if any reference to the producers of such texts and the broader context in which that text emerges and occurs. An interpretive approach to understanding television sees what is shown in terms of who is in fact responsible for the construction of what is screened, the institutional context in which that construction occurs, how and for what purpose the process of selection and combination is done, as well as what is excluded by, and/or censored in so doing. Also looked at are the possible social implications the mythic images might have. The approach outlined above, is similar in many respects to Len Masterman's (1983) view that media education should be concerned with increasing students' understanding of how the media work, how they produce meaning, how they are organized, and their role in the social construction of reality. In looking to a more creative, a more

expansive, and ultimately more holistic appreciation of television, I have opted for the metaphor of interpretation which I believe to be a more appropriate means of facilitating informed and insightful viewing.

As an introduction to interpreting television, I think it important that students be given at least some information as to the institutional context in which media images are produced. A focus on media institutions can be useful in providing insight into the structure, personnel, pressures faced by, and restraints imposed on those institutions. The mass media are institutions, and as such, are influenced by a wide range of factors including a commercial profit motive, the technology at their disposal, government pressure, and the extent of governmental control, as well as the relationship between medium and state. The media are thus subject to various structural features and controls which will, to a greater or lesser extent, have a bearing on the choices made with regard to what is screened. The media, for example, are unlikely to show anything which goes against their own self interest and are, as Stephen Brookfield puts it, by no means "unconcerned with protecting the business corporations which they comprise" (1986:154). The media thus won't want to offend either advertisers or viewers on whom they tend to rely for financial support. Another factor which has a bearing on media output is censorship, an issue which I see as an integral part of the teleconscious curriculum. Every act of selection or

inclusion is, as I have pointed out, one of exclusion, and interpreting television is concerned not only with what appears on screen, but also with what is excluded and why. Manuel Alvarado, Robin Gutch and Tana Wollen maintain that censorship "should only be taught within a programme of work directed at analysis of how the routine processes of television production and distribution are in themselves inevitably a form of censorship" (1987:90). The reason they offer for what I see as a rather cautious approach, is that what the media institutions have deemed "too offensive" for audiences "will arouse a similar reaction from educational institutions" (1987:89). While I appreciate the possible problems that may arise in discussing what might for some people be a highly contentious issue to explore, I don't believe that the socio-cultural ramifications of media restrictions are something which should be ignored.

In developing an approach to interpreting television that moves from the contextual to media images themselves, I would like to suggest the following MEDIA-directed route, with:

> **M**edia mythology **E**xposed, explained and explored through a process of **D**escription and **I**nterpretative investigation by **A**ssociation

What this means is that I see one being able to illustrate, to make plain, the process of myth making on television, by first describing that which is seen, and then, by means of the connections one makes in the interpretation of what is seen,

inquiring into and thereby explaining the possible meaning of those myths in an intelligible way.

To begin with the descriptive level, I share Len Masterman's (1983) view that the simple cognitive task of describing in detail what appears on the screen is one which should be given its due weight in the classroom. This view is shared by John Fiske and John Hartley (1985) who maintain that the starting point of any study of television must be with what is actually seen on screen. What one needs to remember is that the descriptive is by no means an end in itself, but rather an integral part of a more thorough process of discovery. In this regard, one would be looking at features such as programme logo; signature tune, or introductory music; studio layout or set, and the components thereof; the appearance, dress, make-up, gesture, behaviour and speech of those who appear on screen; the camera angles and distance used in filming what is shown; the choice and quality of film and the type of lighting used. John Fiske (1987) maintains that none of the elements selected for inclusion is extraneous, and I believe that a detailed description of what appears on screen forms an important basis for exploring the connotative meaning of what is seen. Watching television with the sound turned down allows for concentration on the descriptive or denotative meaning of what appears on screen, while at the same time providing for an awareness of how the soundtrack has a bearing on our interpretation of what is seen. John Fiske and John Hartley

(1985) write, for example, that music in particular is used to clarify and sometimes create the connotative meaning of what is filmed. A journalist for the London *Independent* writes that in the multi million dollar TV network game, "music is as important as the image" (*Weekend Argus*, Weekender, October 1, 1988:2). In television sport, for example, the 'television teaser' is that bit of music which previews the day's sporting events and is meant to make you want to come back for more, while the 'bumpers' are those snatches of music which link different events and carry over into the advertisements.

Another facet of the descriptive process involves an appreciation of how the various elements referred to above - such as lighting, camera angle and dress - are identifiable as contributing to particular genres. It is familiarity with these elements, and the manner in which they are combined, that makes television intelligible to viewers in terms of genre, and while viewers might well be interpreting television without conscious reference to these elements or codes, an important part of the teleconscious curriculum involves bringing this to the fore. The codes of the medium, be they lighting, make up or dress codes allow for a shared understanding between the viewer and what is shown. This can be likened to language where the syntax of language allows for the combination of words into sentences according to certain rules or conventions. Martin Montgomery writes that the syntax of a language specifies a set of possibilities for sentence construction:

> "the adherence to which ensures some degree of mutual interpretability" (1986:xvii).

One example of a televisual code is referred to by Len Masterman, who writes of the "codes of geography" (1983:89), which indicate relationships as to who is positioned where. In terms of genre-specific geographical codes there is an informality of positioning in a chat show as compared with the formality of news. In a similar way, the colour scheme, logo, introductory music, lighting, studio layout, and manner, language and dress of the ~~pa~~pre~~r~~senter of a pop video programme, are likely to be markedly different to that of the news. Before moving from the descriptive to the interpretive, by focussing on three genres which serve as an illustration of the process involved, there is another aspect of the descriptive concerning genre, which could be reviewed. This has to do with programme schedules and the manner in which genres are organized or arranged through the course of a televiewing day. To be looked at here are questions such as the likely reason as to why programmes appear at the time they do and what this says about the anticipated or intended audience. Any connection between the codes of the medium and how these have a possible bearing on audience appeal could be considered too.

Having looked at at least some of the issues involved in an appreciation of television on a descriptive level, I would like to turn my attention to advertising, soap operas and news as a means of exploring and explaining the process of myth making.

Adverts, described as playing a significant role in defining reality by projecting values and goals consistent with and conducive to the consumer economy (Gillian Dyer, 1982), are said to be one of the richest sources available for surveying the state of modern mythology (Simon Chapman and Garry Egger, 1983). Drawing on an existing stock of images and knowledge - what I would describe as the cultural mythology of the day - advertising speaks to the consumer about products by way of social messages which can be readily understood (Trevor Millum, 1975). Metaphors are one such example of social messages which are particularly popular in adverts, allowing for emotive associations to be linked to a product. By way of metaphor, the brand image of a product can be identified with something desirable and therefore evocative on an emotional level. Visual metaphors are also inferential and can be used to evoke responses on a connotative level. In this way, adverts can be seen as being not about products themselves, but rather about "the images of desire and pleasure that overwhelm the product they are attached to" (John Fiske, 1987:116), socialising us into thinking that we can buy a way of life as well as goals (Gillian Dyer, 1982). Much the same can be said of pop videos which make much use of advertising techniques in the depiction of the products they promote.

Interpreting advertisements could begin with a descriptive listing of what is seen. Such an approach could include a description of the product itself, the props used, actors,

animated characters or other imagery used, the setting, backdrop, poses and expressions. Gillian Dyer (1982) suggests three main areas of focus which can be looked at on the basis of a descriptive approach. These include: appearance, activity, and manner. Appearance is concerned with factors such as gender, size and age of people shown, as well as any national or racial stereotypes which might appear. Appearance has to do too with clothing and hairstyles as well as a description of body parts such as lips, eyes or legs which are shown. Activity is centred on factors such as body movement and positional communication which focusses on the distance and space between those who are shown. Manner involves a description of the behaviour of people in ads and looks at expressions, eye contact and pose. In addition to those factors which Gillian Dyer suggests, I think it important that students take note of the auditory aspects of adverts in describing, for example, the type of music which may be used as well as the voice-overs and language particular characters may use.

What is clearly not within the realm of the descriptive is clarification as to the manner in which those images selected for inclusion interact with and evoke the culturally informed responses they do. Meaning does not exist outside and independent of the dynamic interaction between the images presented on television and the viewer who interprets that image by way of the cultural mythology they bring to and have

evoked by the televiewing experience. In interpreting television, the emphasis is on association, exploring what the images or symbols described mean. It is one thing, for example, to describe the fact that there are books or art works depicted in an advertisement. On an interpretative level, the books may, depending on the context in which they appear, be a motif of symbol of knowledge and education. The image of books thus draws on a cultural association of the printed word with education and knowledge, such cultural mythology being evoked by the mere representation of those books. In the same way, art works of the "high-culture" kind may be indicative of superior culture, cultural authority, affluence or taste (John Berger, 1986). The depiction of body parts such as lips, eyes, legs, hair and hands is one way in which advertisers can have us key into gender mythology. Janice Winship (1981) writes, for example, that women are frequently represented by body parts which stand for the whole. The only male part to appear with any frequency is the hand and in most ads where a hand is shown, "it just has to be a woman's or a man's hand we see there" (Janice Winship, 1981:29), the gender difference being crucial to the meaning of the ad.

In the description of an advert for Marlboro cigarettes, it would be possible to point to the 'Marlboro man', open spaces, horses, and an image of 'Marlboro country'. Moving from the merely descriptive, the mythic significance of such images can be explored, appreciating the 'Marlboro man' as indicative of

the strong silent (i.e. masculine) type: the open spaces depicting freedom, and 'Marlboro country', a metaphor for the elemental freshness and peace offered in contrast to the hurried pace of city life (Simon Chapman and Garry Egger, 1983). Marlboro ads trade on the well established image of cowboys, cattle round-ups and wild horses; images of the wild west which, as Gillian Dyer points out, are all drawn from the mythic world of cowboy films and transferred to the world of cigarettes. In this way, the mythology of adventure, masculinity and freedom are associated with, and promised by the use of a particular product. Much the same can be said of margarine ads which draw on images associated with country freshness and health, or motor car ads which make promises of not only motoring, but social and 'romantic' success. Adding audio would enable us to explore whether commentary or music used reinforces, contradicts, explains or expands on the visual image shown.

From adverts to soaps, and a look at a genre in which, as Robert Cathcart (1986) points out, the important thing is not the social issues, the settings or the cast of characters per se, but an intricate plot which allows for communication about interpersonal relationships. John Fiske maintains that the world of soaps is one of perpetual disturbance and threat with narrative interest centred on people's feelings and emotions, "as they live through a constant series of disruptions and difficulties" (1987:183). The emotional

dimension of interpersonal communication is thus, "the substance of soap opera" (Robert Cathcart, 1986:208). In order to achieve an emotional connection between programme and viewer, soap operas make use of numerous devices or codes;

> "to make it easy for the viewer to accept that they are part of the soap opera community" (Robert Cathcart, 1986).

One of the ways in which this myth of participation is carried out, is to slow the dramatic time of soap operas to approximate 'real' time. This allows viewers to identify with the action on screen as it evolves in an identifiable way. Another feature of soap operas which makes for accessibility is their contemporary setting. In this regard, the vice president of the company responsible for syndicating the soap opera *Loving*, Joshua Braun, maintains that one of the reasons for the show's international appeal is the use of contemporary music and the cynical, acerbic tone of the *dialogue*. The use of noted guest performers is cited as another reason for the popularity of the show (*Weekend Argus*, September 2, 1989:21).

The camera style of soaps in, for example, the use of close-ups and extreme close-ups is another feature of this genre which establishes a link between the viewer and characters in the show. John Fiske notes that the camera frequently lingers on the telling expressions of characters,

> "giving the viewers time not just to experience the emotion of the character but to imagine what constitutes that emotion" (1987:183).

Robert Cathcart writes that the programme logo of soaps is superimposed over the action with no narrator or announcer to come between the programme and viewer. This device forms part of the process of the camera eye, becoming our eye, as we step into the programme, "ready to partake of the interaction" (Robert Cathcart, 1986:214). The little use of background lighting in soap operas makes for a focus on performers themselves, allowing for concentration on the part of viewers on non-verbal features such as facial expression and other aspects of body language. What Robert Cathcart describes as "the overworked dramatic chords of music" (1986:213) are another of those signals which allow us to anticipate, as well as lend a heightened sense to the emotions.

Robert Cathcart writes that what appears to some critics as dramatic weakness - the repetitive monotony of camera angles, lighting, setting, camera movement and editing - "works to establish a simple, clear code making it easy for viewers to follow the story line and to identify with the characters" (1983:213). It is the very obviousness and repetitive use of familiar soap opera codes which serve as a means of making viewers forget about the production techniques and invite them to become absorbed in the story unfolding on screen. The popularity of soaps could well be ascribed to the fact that they allow for immersion in a story which, with its readily recognizable settings and ostensibly unobtrusive techniques,

allow for direct involvement in the lives of the characters depicted on screen.

If the mythology of soaps is one by way of which the various techniques of this genre are used to encourage viewers to believe in their immediate participation in the unfolding emotional drama on screen, then the production process of news serves, in similar fashion, to establish a particular relationship between the viewer and news in a manner described as "ritualistic, symbolic and ultimately mythic" (Peter Dahlgren, 1988:284:) The purpose behind this is, as I see it, to lend credibility to the mythology of objectivity on which the news media rely.

The assumption for many viewers is that if something appears in a news broadcast, it must be important (David Altheide, 1976), a perception which is influenced in part by the fact that news, with variations depending on the channel and time of day on which it is broadcast always establishes a certain formality in its reliance on stiff postures, fairly formal clothing, grammatically complete sentences, a general lack of emotion, and the use of rather long camera shots or respectful medium close-ups (Laurie Taylor and Bob Mullan, 1986). John Fiske (1987) writes that there is a direct link between 'objectivity' and the features of authenticity and immediacy. The immediacy of news evoked, for example, in the use of 'on the spot' reports, the use of telephones on the news desk, references to

reports 'just handed to me' by newsreaders and the illustration of news stories by way of film clips, imply that there has been no time for editorializing and that television brings us events as they happen. The immediacy of news is thus a deliberate means of masking what John Fiske describes as "the extent of the construction or interpretation that news involves" (1987:289), promoting television over the press and diverting attention from the gathering and distribution involved.

Described as an institutional method of making information available to consumers (Gaye Tuchman, 1981), news involves the mediation of events from a perceiver to someone who is assumed not to have seen that event (Gunther Kress, 1983b). The news story is the medium through which a definition of an event is presented (David Altheide, 1976) and the moment a reporter puts a sentence down on paper, keys a story into computer or captures visual material or video or film, they are engaged in a process of selection. Tom Wicker maintains that when it comes to reporting, all journalism is advocacy journalism as there is no way for a reporter to be neutral:

> "to report an event is to select what is important and significant about it" (in *Harpers* Magazine, January 1985).

According to John Fiske, the types of stories, the forms they will take and the programme structure into which they are placed are determined long before the events of the day occur, a view shared by Len Masterman (1983) who suggests that the news stories are pretty well set before the reporter has even

left the office. News is thus "defined, selected, covered and presented for specifiable purposes" (David Altheide, 1976:120), in accordance with the decisions as to what constitutes news. In the selection and combination of news items there are numerous factors which have a bearing on the choices made, as well as the manner in which the news items are packaged and presented on screen. Barrie McMahon and Robyn Quin (1986) point to the fact that news is just as much a construction as any television drama and in common with such programmes, must be sufficiently entertaining to attract an audience. It is not surprising therefore that the news media frequently reduce what might well be complex social issues, into readily understandable representations of what the issues entail. In this way, for example, a complex socio-political issue involving a multitude of performers and contrasting ideological perspectives can be reduced to a simple cops 'n' robbers, cowboys 'n' Indians, heroes 'n' villains, us : them dichotomy. Forrest Sawyer writes that because of factors such as holding viewer attention, those responsible for selecting and constructing what is shown, end up taking the sharpest and most symbolic representation of a position. In this way, "everything comes out more black-and-white than the world actually is" (Forrest Sawyer, 1988:33).

The news media are engaged not only in the construction and categorization of events, "they attach significance to them, give them meaning" (Len Masterman, 1983:86). The news media

thus play a role in the framing of a particular view of the world in which events are identified and placed in context; a process which involves, for example, the use of particular headlines or captions; the juxtaposition of news items and film, the reliance on 'experts' and the order in which the news items appear, or are shown. In the construction of news, it is important to remember, as Richard McRoberts notes, that "the producer selects what stories to cover, the reporter selects questions to ask and what 'angle' to use, the camera operator selects what shots to film..." (1987b:166). In addition, there are questions as to what shots are actually shown and the commentary that goes with what is shown. What the newsreader says in introducing each item of news is also of considerable importance in terms of the angle which the news medium prefers. In this regard, John Langer maintains that the television personality or newsreader

> "functions to provide coherence and acts as the principle instrument for classifying and unifying news events into some kind of acknowledged order" (1981:357).

Barrie McMahon and Robyn Quin (1986) are of the view that the friendly, authoritative newsreader provides reassurance that the world is in capable hands. The personality of the newsreader thus serves as a means of lending further authority to the messages of a medium which, as David Altheide (1976) points out, is already viewed as more credible than any other. John Langer maintains that it is the personality system of the medium which is largely responsible for winning the consent of viewers to the preferred interpretations of the medium and

rendering invisible their ideological task. For Kath Davies, Julienne Dickey and Teresa Stratford (1987) the use of an avuncular but authoritative male, and of young and conventionally attractive female newscasters with their 'neutral' accents, renders the media's pronouncements effectively unchallengeable and sanitised. One of the most important functions of the newsreader is thus to make the news appear credible, authentic, trustworthy and factual (John Langer, 1983). One of the aspects of interpreting television would be an exploration of the role of the newsreader in association with those technical codes of the medium which contribute to the mythology of news. As Peter Dahlgren (1988) writes, the real significance of news programmes is not to be found on the empirically manifest level, but is latent and must be ascertained by interpretive analysis.

Drawing on the interpretive approach to understanding television, it is my intention, in chapter five, to illustrate this process by way of reference to a particular network and the mythology to which it subscribes. In doing so, it must be stated that I see teleconsciousness as involving more than a formulaic, or mechanical approach to the medium. Interpreting television can be seen as being concerned with a great deal more than a set of skills deemed necessary for an understanding of the mythic workings of a particular medium. In exposing and exploring, of working towards an appreciation of mythology as a

means of presenting a particular world view, interpreting television is directly concerned with education:

> "to enhance qualitative awareness, to release imagination and to free people to see, shape and transform" (Maxine Greene, 1978:193).

It is an approach such as this which offers what Ira Shor refers to as a critical distance on society in place of an uncritical immersion in the status quo:

> "to think of changing it" (in Paulo Freire and Ira Shor, 1987:14).

Manual Alvorado, Robin Gutch and Tana Wollen (1987) write that if students can at the very least be taught that the world may not be such an immovable place, then they have been engaged in an education of some validity. Expanding consciousness may well be "the riskiest enterprise on earth" (Marilyn Ferguson, 1982:397), to pioneer, "anxiety arousing for the teacher and threatening to colleagues" (Carl Rogers, 1978:79). Demystification may well involve assuming risks,

> "and to expect constantly to be punished" (Paulo Freire, in Paulo Freire and Ira Shor, 1987:37).

Accepting this challenge, interpreting television could well be viewed as an imperative contrast to the moral indifference that so much which passes for education can be.

Chapter 5:

Mythic Echoes of SABC-TV

Every network, be it state owned or privately controlled, is engaged in myth-making. With particular regard to the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC), it is my contention that this network is involved in presenting what I have termed, a mythic echo of National Party policy and the world view with which that concurs. On one level then, interpreting television by way of the SABC requires insight into the metaphors, myths and morality of the National Party as well as the rhetoric by which such myths are construed.

In South Africa, the mythology of the Afrikaner Nationalist movement reflects the fact, as Leonard Thompson notes, that the Afrikaner people have never amounted to a numerical majority of the population, "in any specific territory" (1985:25). The mythology of apartheid, in whatever guise, purports to be a natural account of the world, while serving a practical purpose in promoting the interests of a particular group. Paulo Freire writes that the domination by an elite, the exploitation of people by a minority requires the ruling group as he calls it, to deny that they are doing it to someone else (in Paulo Freire and Ira Shor, 1987). Myths must thus be invented to hide domination and present it as something else. In this way, myths can be seen as making an indispensable contribution to what John Broughton and Marta Zahaykevitch describe as the

process of shoring up illegitimate authority, justifying state domination, easing the administrative management of people, and concealing from them:

> "the possibility of thinking, feeling or acting in any other way" (1983:154).

John Sharp maintains that the classification of the South African population by way of terms such as race, tribe or ethnic group:

> "constitute a discourse about the nature of South African society which reveals the logic and the interests of those who wield power" (1988a:6).

According to Martin West, it is this process of classification which exists to divide and control in terms of access to political rights and economic resources;

> "and thereby to maintain white power and privilege" (1988:110).

The point has been made that to many South Africans, it is a matter of 'common sense' that the society consists of different racial and ethnic groups, each with its own traditions and culture (John Sharp, 1988a). According to John Sharp, different races and ethnic groups, as well as unique cultures, do not exist in any ultimate sense, but are real:

> "only to the extent that they are the product of a particular world view" (1988a:1).

As with the process of myth-making in general, the mythology of apartheid is by no means static, and has been adopted to meet the changing needs of those responsible for its construction. Peter du Preez makes the point, for example, that until about the late 1960's, the pivot of political identity in South Africa was 'white' identity:

"All others were non-white" (1979:349).

Peter du Preez writes that in the decade from about 1968, this changed, with the notion of white superiority having all but disappeared to be replaced with a construct of differentiation. Another change to apartheid mythology could be seen in the run-up to the September 1989 election in South Africa, where the dominant myth of the Nationalists appeared to be one of the country being made up of distinct groups to be accommodated in a political system with no one 'group' dominating another. The manner and extent to which such changes in terminology, as well as metaphors expressive of Nationalist mythology are echoed by the SABC, could well form the basis for a detailed study of its own. Included in this could well be a focus on SABC annual reports, which in one instance at least, is said to have been

"riddled with Natspeak" (*Cape Times*, June 25, 1987).

Of particular interest to me in this chapter, however, are examples of SABC-TV broadcasts which suggest that the corporation is indeed involved in perpetuating the mythology of the Nationalist regime, presenting this as being reflective of the interests of the nation as a whole. Apartheid is by no means the only mythology propounded by the SABC. It is, however, necessary to understanding much of the mythic imagery presented on SABC-TV.

The introduction of television in South Africa had long been resisted, particularly by the then Minister of Posts and Telegraphs, Albert Hertzog, who is said to have regarded the

medium with deep suspicion and claimed it to be an instrument of the devil. In a parliamentary debate on the issue of television, Dr Hertzog accused the opposition of nefarious motives in agitating for a television service. According to him, South Africa would be forced to import television programmes propagating mixing across the colour line. In addition, the Nationalist Minister was of the view that advertising:

> "would engender a sense of dissatisfaction among the country's non-whites and so inflame race relations" (Ivor Wilkins and Hans Strydom, 1978:277).

Ivor Wilkins and Hans Strydom write that when Dr Hertzog was removed from his portfolio, the demand for television increased and pressure mounted on the Government to appoint a commission of inquiry into the feasibility of setting up a television service in South Africa. Dr Piet Meyer, who was simultaneously head of the South African Broadcasting Corporation and Broederbond - (described by Ivor Wilkins and Hans Strydom as an 'ultra secret organization') which by stealth and sophisticated political intrigue, has waged a remarkable campaign to harness political, social and economic forces in South Africa to its cause of ultimate Afrikaner domination (1978:1) - headed the inquiry. The commission was apparently made up almost entirely of Broederbonders, and its findings presented to members of that organization before being revealed to the Government and parliament. After much in the way of preparation and planning, a television service was launched in January 1976 by the SABC.

For its part, the SABC is at pains to deny any Government interference in its affairs. During an interview on the nightly news programme *Network*, the then newly appointed head of the SABC board, Professor Christo Viljoen, stated that in his more than two years as a member of the SABC board and as vice-chair, he had never received requests or orders from any government minister regarding the organization's appointments, policies, structure or other aspects (*The Argus*, July 4, 1989:3). And in an interview with *The Argus*, Professor Viljoen responded to a question on government control by saying:

> "Admittedly we are the national broadcaster, but we are not government controlled" (*The Argus*, August 25, 1989:25).

With particular reference to news, the then director of SABC-TV news, Sakkie Burger, gave the "categorical assurance" in an interview that there is, as he put it:

> "absolutely no influence from the government on editorial decisions, on the handling of a particular story or on a theme Network would like to handle on a specific evening" (*The Argus*, Tonight, June 19, 1989:2).

Whether or not direct interference on the part of government in the affairs of the SABC actually occurs, there is, I intend to illustrate, substantial evidence of a mythic echo on the part of the network. One of the clues as to this link is provided by the fact that the SABC is controlled by a board of officials, appointments to the board being made by the State President. This, in theory, affords the incumbent the opportunity of selecting only those who concur with the myths and morality to which the President subscribes. Top management

of the SABC can therefore be selected and dismissed on the basis of their interpretation of the world and the manner in which it accords with the policies and outlook of the ruling regime. In 1987, for example, Professor Sampie Terreblanche was relieved of his position as vice-chair of the SABC board shortly after he adopted a public stance contrary to that of the National Party. In 1988, the Director General of the SABC, Riaan Eksteen, was stripped of his post, his demise being attributed to the personal interference of the then State President, Pieter W Botha. According to press reports, the State President did not approve of the manner in which the SABC covered Presidential differences with the leader of the Labour Party in the House of Representatives, Allan Hendrickse (*Weekend Argus*, April 9, 1988:16). While holding no brief for Riaan Eksteen who, it argues, accepted a highly paid political appointment as director general and knew that political interference went with the territory, the *Sunday Star* made the comment that his plight serves to illustrate the Government's insatiable need to control and its refusal to countenance even the mildest dissenting whisper (*Sunday Star*, April 17, 1988:12). *Weekend Argus* saw Riaan Eksteen's dismissal as a sad reflection of the extent to which a major public facility:

> "has degenerated under the NP's aegis to the sort of radio and television service common in a classic authoritarian state" (*Weekend Argus*, April 9, 1988:16)

In what could be seen as another example of government intrusion, Ian Gray writes that the Minister of Foreign Affairs, Pik Botha, showed once again just how independent the

SABC really is by having a repudiatory statement included in news bulletins which followed an election debate in which he featured. In response to Professor Christo Viljoen's, "we don't take any instructions from anybody" assertion, Ian Gray muses:

> "except when ordered to perhaps?" (*Sunday Star*, Review, August 27, 1989:9).

Whatever the acts of compliance or conspiratorial intrigue, it is to the mythic imagery - as can be ascertained from what appears on screen - that I look to primarily in interpreting the SABC.

One example of the process of selection and combination designed to promote a particular world view, can be seen in SABC-TV's "technicolour tribute to the South African Defence Force" (Garth Verdal, *The Argus*, Tonight, December 8, 1987:3). In this programme, scenes of sunset silhouetting trees and troops, tanks on the plains of battle, as well as jet fighters arcing across the bright blue sky, were combined and presented together with quotes from the Bible and William Blake. Added to this was the music of Tchaikovsky's 1812 Overture. Footage of a variety of carefully selected international 'experts' attesting to South Africa's military dominance south of the Sahara, and the quality of its military personnel and machines, was interspersed between commentary provided by a narrator. The opinions of pacifists, End Conscription Campaigners and others who might have expressed dissenting views, were noticeably absent, as were images of the horror of war, of

maimed bodies and mutilated corpses. There was also no mention whatsoever of the psychological or emotional terror of war or the deleterious effects of militarisation on society. References to the destabilising role played by the South African military establishment in neighbouring countries was also excluded. Garth Verdal describes the overall image of the programme as prettified and simplistic. It is, as he puts it, slick, glossy and dangerous:

> "not the least because of the way it confused defending South Africa with defending apartheid" (*The Argus*, Tonight, December 8, 1987:3).

Glorification of the South African Defence Force is linked, as I see it, to the myth of South Africa as a beleagured bastion of civilised standards under threat by external forces seeking to destroy all that is noble and pure. An integral part of this "total onslaught" mythology - particularly pronounced under the premiership of Pieter W Botha - is the need for a strong and committed army of dedicated patriots fighting for what is presented as a just and valued cause. The romanticisation of war, such as in the documentary referred to above, as well as in those local and imported series which present military involvement as glamorous and of illustrious pursuit, can be viewed as an intrinsic part of the mythic whole. Namibian independence (with the withdrawal of South African troops from that country), the deprivation, as a result of changes in Eastern Europe, of the communist bogey, and a shift from the militaristic tendencies of Pieter W Both to what purports to be a more conciliatory Frederick de Klerk, could be

seen as contributing to an expected change in the mythic constructs presented by the SABC. Mythic shifts are perhaps the clearest manifestation of the mythic echo to which this chapter refers. Some examples of this are looked at in the paragraphs that follow.

In a letter to the *Cape Times*, the Very Reverend Edward King, then Dean of Cape Town and Vicar General, wrote that it is part of the government's policy to portray Archbishop Desmond Tutu as a man of violence who consorts with crypto communists bent on the destruction of this land. That he is bent on the destruction of apartheid is undeniable, comments the Dean, but a person of violence, the Archbishop is not. Writing of the deliberate attempt by the SABC to denigrate Archbishop Tutu, the Dean presents what I see as a clear illustration of the mythic echo. In his letter, Dean King notes that from the SABC:

> "there comes nothing but distortion, selective and inaccurate quotation, and never, but never, an opportunity for him (the Archbishop) to appear on TV or radio to speak about his hopes, his longings, his convictions" (*Cape Times*, June 25, 1987).

According to the Dean, the SABC have decided that truth shall not be found in the Archbishop's 'mouth', that he must be silenced and his words distorted:

> "because people prefer to live with lies and their illusions" (*Cape Times*, June 25, 1987).

An example of the denigration to which Dean King refers can be seen in the SABC's handling of the Archbishop's enthronement. According to Peter Soal, a member of parliament who attended

the event, the passing reference the SABC gave the enthronement was typical of the way it distorts and manipulates the news, serving the narrow interests of Afrikaner nationalism, while treating the majority of South Africans with contempt. In what is described by Peter Soal as yet another hatchet job on an opponent of the government, the SABC gave prominence not to the service, but to women who tried to hand over a wreath in protest at Archbishop Tutu's political stance (*Cape Times*, September 9, 1986:6). For the *Cape Times*. the abysmal coverage given by the SABC, to what it described as a "remarkable spectacle" and display of liturgical pageantry and splendour - "plainly of compelling news interest" - was hardly unexpected:

> "But it remains noteworthy as yet another egregious example of the unprofessionalism of the electronic media under the control of this State-owned corporation" (*Cape Times*, September 9, 1986:6).

A mythic shift in the depiction of Archbishop Tutu by the SABC, appeared to occur with a meeting of church leaders - including the Archbishop - with President de Klerk. It was after this meeting that Archbishop Tutu was shown discussing his response on SABC-TV news. The Archbishop was also included in the line-up of people providing comment on President de Klerk's February 2, 1990 parliamentary opening address, and subsequent announcement of Nelson Mandela's release. If no longer the ogre, this reflects, not a change in the Archbishop's views but rather, a mythic shift on the part of the SABC.

Another example of a mythic shift in accordance with National Party policy - on the part of the SABC - can be seen in the 13

part series, *Aanpassings* (Adaptations). Described as a dangerously simplistic philosophical look at why Afrikaners ("us") are different to and perhaps more developed than blacks ("them"), *Aanpassings* did not, as one critic saw it, cold-bloodedly justify apartheid or racial purity, but with subtlety and in a "friendly" tone, pointed to the benefits that "a more logical and perfect way of thinking" has on "less developed societies" (Marianne Thamm, *Cape Times*, August 26, 1987). TV reporter, Tony Jackman, writes that according to *Aanpassings*:

> "the real difference between black and white South Africans is said to run much deeper than just skin colour and is portrayed as a difference in both thinking and doing" (*The Argus*, Tonight, August 27, 1987).

In another review, Tony Jackman maintains that the series seems to be aimed at the politically conservative South African, suggesting to racists that they talk to "these 'imperfect' people" and learn to live with them. The mythic shift in this series involves thus a move from the rigidity of separate development to one of accommodation. The decision by the SABC to screen the series *People Like Us* - which features neighbours who are not of the same officially designated 'group' - only after provision for such "free settlement" was made by National Party decree, is indicative of a similar shift in the workings of the SABC.

An example of selective construction to engender a particular world view is vividly illustrated in the SABC-TV tribute to forty years of Nationalist rule. Commenting on this programme,

Sunday Star writer Sheryl Raine expresses the view that whoever supplied the music for this tribute was an expert at deception. Combined with a narrator:

> "who sounded as though he was providing a travelogue to some exotic outpost, and a script so uncritical one could almost see flakes of whitewash form on the screen,"

"cheerful ditties" accompanied the 'coloured' people being removed from the common voters roll,

> "and happy notes danced as strangely smiling onlookers waved the lorries goodbye as they carried out one of the most hated acts perpetrated by the present Government, a forced removal" (*Sunday Star*, TIMEOUT, June 5, 1988:13).

In this programme, the homelands - nominally independent chunks of South African territory - were billed as a great success, while there was no mention of the enormous cost to taxpayers in the financial burden of these products of Nationalist rule. Other features which are clearly reflective of the mythology of those responsible for the programme's construction, include the noticeably bigger type on the television screen announcing the accomplishments of Pieter Botha, and the fact that not a single 'black' politician was shown commenting on or evaluating four decades of Nationalist rule.

With particular reference to news, the SABC - with its legally sanctioned monopoly on TV news - has no competition, which would, as the *Cape Times* contends:

> "constantly show them up as the incompetent purveyors of distorted and manipulated news which they undoubtedly are" (*Cape Times*, September 9, 1986:6).

Apart from a clever selecting and editing of material, SABC news bulletins are said to make use of implication and insinuation, together with omissions, emphases and the particular structuring of broadcasts in order to present a specific world view (Garth Verdal, *The Argus*, Tonight, April 12, 1988). In terms of parliamentary politics, an *Argus* editorial notes that opponents of the National Party are subjected to such biased and unequal treatment on SABC-TV, that one of the revealing characteristics of debates in parliament on the SABC's budget vote has been criticism by all parties, other than the NP, of the SABC's slanted political coverage (*The Argus*, June 20, 1989:14). An example of this is the absence of coverage of the launch of the Democratic Party in Cape Town on April 11, 1989. Described in *The Argus* as an "enthusiastic meeting" attended by a "capacity crowd" (*The Argus*, April 12, 1989:4), there was not one SABC-TV camera to be seen. The *Cape Times* noted that the absence fo SABC cameras at what it referred to as "an event of national significance", is scandalous;

> "but fully in keeping with the SABC's deplorable record" (*Cape Times*, April 13, 1989:6).

The SABC did, however, cover the launch of the Democratic Party in Johannesburg. During the 8 p.m. newscast on Saturday, April 8, 1989, some background material, as well as interviews with the three co-leaders of the party, was shown. What caught my attention during the interviews, was that the camera was visibly shaky. I am not suggesting that this is evidence of a deliberate 'trick' on the part of the SABC, but it is worth

considering how cameras, lighting and sound can be used to create a particular effect. Television is an essentially image-centred medium, and the use of particular camera angles (as in filming someone or something from above or below; close-up, extremely close-up or at a distance); lighting (be it soft, enhancing, harsh or bright); and sound (in terms of quality, volume and tone) may well have an impact on the impressions we form of who or what is shown.

Election coverage is an aspect of newscasts which provides a useful illustration of the mythic images by which the SABC abides. Commenting on SABC coverage of the 1987 general election in South Africa, *Sunday Star*, media monitor Sheryl Raine writes that if the SABC were to rewrite its founding charter, the final clause should read:

> "half the story is better than no story at all" (*Sunday Star*, March 22, 1987).

Besides the sheer amount of time devoted to Nationalist speakers in the run up to the election, other features referred to by Sheryl Raine include:

- The "Natwich" - in which opposition viewpoints are sandwiched in between those of the National Party, and
- the "Goldilocks" technique - ensuring that the National Party has the last word on any subject.

The depiction of National Party representatives being allowed to speak for themselves to the camera, in contrast to the mediated comments of people from other parties, is another of these ploys (*Sunday Star*, May 3, 1987). Writing about coverage

of the 1987 election, Guy Willoughby maintains that there can be no doubt that the SABC politicked shamelessly on behalf of the government. One of the ways in which this was done was to arrange news programmes so as to reinforce the government's perspective, concentrating on precisely those topics being highlighted by the National Party in its campaign. In the 1987 election, these included: external security threats and the linking of the then official opposition to the ANC (*Cape Times*, May 15, 1987). This can be seen as being part of the government's "total onslaught" propaganda by which - as member of parliament Tian van der Merwe notes - the government's adversaries are linked into one supposedly threatening group which is discredited and whose loyalty and patriotism are questioned. Such groups are also linked to political violence by way of suggestion (*Weekend Argus*, May 27, 1989:17). An example of this is the manner in which a number of South Africans who travelled to the Senegalese capital, Dakar, for talks with the ANC were subject to official ridicule, attempts at character assassination and branded as useful idiots of the ANC (Christo Nel, in Harvey Tyson (ed), 1987:215). Christo Nel writes that the delegation was often challenged to justify themselves, yet the initiative, which occupied local headlines for several weeks, had apparently not been deemed newsworthy enough to warrant any time on SABC radio or TV for the participants concerned.

My televiewing experience of the 1989 election campaign as featured on SABC-TV supports Ivor Powell's comment that although the approach of the SABC was "somewhat less banana republic", there was, as he put it:

> "little to make one doubt that the government is still paying the bills" (*Weekly Mail*, September 1-7, 1989:15).

Debates, for example, were carried out along racial lines, and all House of Assembly debates featured a member of the National Party. During the run-up to the election, the Mass Democratic Movement (MDM) featured prominently - not because the SABC considered the organisation as being newsworthy in its own right - but because the movement had been identified by government as the 'enemy'. Representatives of the MDM were not at all questioned as to the organisation's strategies or role, and were not asked to comment on or explain about protest action carried out to coincide with the election campaign. Instead of the MDM being given a chance to explain its actions - such as protest against segregated hospital and beach facilities - viewers were, as Sheryl Raine notes, treated to large doses of Law and Order Minister, Adrian Vlok, "exploiting the situation and mercilessly manipulating events to suit the National Party's platform" (*Sunday Star*, August 6, 1989:7). The easy access of government representatives to the television screen, as well as the uncritical manner in which they are questioned, if indeed subject to interview at all, is another example of SABC compliance to government views. *The Star* makes

the point that while the party in power will "always", as it puts it, have an advantage of newsmaking:

> "it is only a television service which is overwhelmingly on official service which will provide such an accessible platform for government views which are not tested or probed by informed interviewers" (in Ivor Wilkins and Hans Strydom, 1978:283).

During the 8 p.m. TV newscast on Saturday, August 26, 1989, the Minister of Law and Order was given the opportunity to state that members of the MDM had been instructed by the ANC to foster unrest, make the country ungovernable and disrupt the forthcoming elections. No comment was elicited from the MDM by the SABC in response to such allegations. There was also no opportunity afforded the organisation for a rebuttal of claims which were simply presented as fact. In the same news broadcast, the police 'unrest report' - which details incidents of unrest in South Africa - featured enormous MDM lettering in the background while the report was being read. The implication of this juxtaposition - both in its own right, as well as in conjunction with the accusations levelled by Law and Order Minister Adrian Vlok - as I see it, is that the unrest is being caused by the MDM. The insinuation too is that it is all being inspired by the ANC. The fact that the MDM lettering used throughout the unrest report was in what could be easily be interpreted as fire-colour yellow and red, is no coincidence.

During the 6 p.m. newscast on August 2, 1989, an item on protest action by the MDM against segregated hospital services

featured a narrated report with visuals. No MDM representatives or participants in the protest were interviewed or asked to express their views. The next item on the same newscast concerned a meeting of an organisation called the Church Alliance of South Africa. In focussing the camera on the audience at this meeting, much emphasis was placed on the presence of blacks. When the President and Deputy President of this alliance were interviewed, they condemned as "anti spiritual" and "anti Christian" the action taken by the MDM. One of them stated that MDM action would "inevitably lead to violence". The implication of such an interview seen in conjunction with other reports on the MDM, is that the movement is violent, and that it is only police vigilance by which the threatening action of MDM subversives can be controlled. The reference to MDM action being "anti-scriptural" implies that both clerics and others who support protest are being both irresponsible and heretic. It is no coincidence that these comments were presented by the SABC at the same time that church leaders like Archbishop Tutu were expressing their support for the MDM's peaceful protest against apartheid. With no reference being made as to the MDM's reasons for its protest action, the impression is given that they have no justification for what they are doing and that they are intent on subverting the established order. MDM action is thus presented as being part of the "international plot" against South Africa's destruction.

Barely five months after the September 1989 election, the National Party government of President de Klerk declared its intention to work for a negotiated settlement towards what it termed a "new South Africa". To facilitate this process, the unbanning of the ANC, as well as the lifting of restrictions on a number of other organisations and people, was announced. Those who had been villified as murderous terrorists operating at communist behest were now to be looked at as potential partners to a negotiated peace. This mythic shift on the part of the NP was duly reflected on SABC-TV. By way of interviews, as well as comments by representatives of, amongst others, the ANC, South African viewers were given entree into the thinking of organisations such as these. Professor Christo Viljoen insists that the speech by President de Klerk at the opening of parliament on February 2 had little to do with the 1990 "new-look news", besides scrapping media regulations which he claims prevented the SABC quoting organisations such as the ANC and SACP (*Weekly Mail*, March 9-15, 1990:24). The question must be asked though as to why, if in Professor Christo Viljoen's words:

> "we've shown that we are serious about producing exciting unbiased news reportage" (*Weekly Mail*, March 9-15, 1990:24),

the SABC so slavishly followed the National Party line on the ANC. The *Sunday Star* comments that changes on SABC do not mean that Auckland Park has become independent of government -

> "just that government policy has changed" (*Sunday Star*, February 11, 1990:14).

While glasnost, as the *Sunday Star* calls it, has hit the SABC, it is by no means indicative of anything more than a mythic shift, once again in response to the policies of the governing regime. Despite Professor Christo Viljoen's comment that since President de Klerk took over:

> "we haven't received a single instruction from Tuynhuis or the Minister of Information and Broadcasting" (*Weekly Mail*, March 9-15, 1990:21),

it would, as Ian Gray writes, be naive to think that President de Klerk would not use the powerful media of television and radio ... "to spread his new gospel" (*Sunday Star*, February 18, 1990:12).

My intention in this chapter has been on reflecting, by way of example, a range of techniques which can be used to perpetuate, as well as reflect shifts in the world view to which a network subscribes. Some additional examples will be looked at in the course of suggesting ideas for a teleconscious curriculum in chapter six.

It would be conjecture to anticipate changes to the mythic constructs presented on SABC-TV. Based on the mythic shifts to which I've referred, it could be expected that for so long as the National Party retains power, the mythic echo to which I've pointed, will predominate. This could be looked at in not only newscasts, but the channels, programme structure, division of language, the censorship involved in, and actual content and presentation of, what is shown. One of the ways in which to

interpret the shifting echo on SABC-TV would be to compare video footage of newscasts prior to and then following President Frederick de Klerk's February 2 parliamentary address. What may well emerge is a noticeable shift in the ideology of televisual imagery as presented on SABC-TV. Of particular note is an evident change in the definition of who occupies the centre of the political stage. Prominent in April/May 1990 SABC-TV newscasts, for instance, are the National Party and ANC. Prior to the National Party government's decision to unban and engage in discussion with the ANC, coverage of the parties represented in parliament predominated, with the African National Congress - in line with official government policy - being relegated to the position of public enemy and terrorist scourge. ANC director of international affairs, Thabo Mbeki, maintains that even though the SABC's reporting of the organisation had improved, the people who ran the corporation were appointed by the NP. This, Thabo Mbeki saw as a problem in future negotiations (*The Cape Times*, May 4, 1990:2). A possible precedent to changes beyond exclusive National Party rule might well be reflected in the Namibian experience in the South West African Broadcasting Corporation becoming the NBC. Whatever the changes and whoever's in charge, the myth is the medium and, to my mind, the interpretive key.

Chapter 6:

Developing a Teleconscious Curriculum: Description

Having outlined a framework for interpreting television, my intention in this chapter is to focus on thematic concerns that a teleconscious curriculum could include as well as to illustrate how such an approach could be creatively applied in a classroom context. In order to facilitate an awareness of television, it is necessary to begin with descriptive viewing. What I mean by descriptive is that viewers be encouraged to describe in a mindful and attentive way that they observe on screen.

A descriptive approach could thus be characterised as the most judicious way in which interpreting television might begin. Working from the descriptive, one could look to other aspects of television such as the selective construction of programmes, genre and myth. A teleconscious curriculum could thus be concerned with a range of issues, to include:

* Descriptive viewing. This could include a focus on schedules, titles, characters, settings, music, and other features which might be seen or heard;
* An awareness of the production process of television, including the people and techniques by which programmes are made;
* An understanding of networks; the socio political climate in which their products are broadcast or made, commercial

considerations, legislative restriction on what may be broadcast, and possible interference by the government or state in what is shown;

* The characteristics of programmes which make them genre distinct;
* The manner in which lighting, music, camera angles or other devices are used to establish particular effect;
* The demystification of news as a social construct;
* The depiction of characters on television and the mythic role they play;
* The presentation of social issues on television and how this is done;
* The morality of programmes, including the values and world view which they present or describe;
* Advertising;
* Music video;
* Censorship; and
* Interpreting television as a means to demystifying myth.

A number of these issues have been dealt with in some detail, and my emphasis here is on complementing the framework for interpreting television which I've already described.

Teleconsciousness is concerned with demythologising that process of negotiation through which communication occurs. In much the same way that we interpret and make inferences from the eye-contact, body language, clothing, appearance and manner of people with whom we interact, so too is our experience of

television an interactive process of negotiating the meanings the medium conveys. Descriptive viewing is focussed on sharpening perception of those aspects of television which may appear spontaneous and natural but are in fact contrived. Len Masterman (1980) writes that non-verbal communication such as clothing, facial expression and gesture tends to mask the selection process by which they are chosen. A useful way of approaching this aspect of television is to have students focus on non-verbal communication by way of classroom activity. It is through exercises like these that perceptual awareness applicable to televiewing may be enhanced.

Eye contact is one of the non-verbal cues by which we attempt to interpret the emotions and feelings of others. Robert Baron and Donn Byrne maintain that our perceptions of the way other people feel, their motives and traits:

> "play an important role in shaping the nature of our interactions with them" (1981:43).

The frequency, length and pattern of eye gaze can be used, for example, as an indication of attitude or feeling. Len Masterman (1980) suggests that one way of making students aware of eye contact is to have two students in a group of three hold a discussion while the observer takes note of the eye contact between the speakers. Another exercise is to have students dramatise stituations in which, for example, one of two speakers having a conversation is expressing boredom, embarrassment, anger or love. The idea is for the eye contact between speakers to be observed. Outside the classroom the eye

contact between the cashier and shopper at a supermarket checkout, between the driver and passenger entering a bus or between two people holding a conversation while walking along the street are further examples of non-verbal communication which can be looked at. Students could be asked to describe to the class an instance of eye contact they observe in public. The description of eye contact in interpersonal communiocation is one way of focussing on such non-verbal cues. Describing the eye contact in advertisements which appear in print is another means by which such an approach can be explored. Here one could look to the eye contact between characters and/or the contact established between the person or people depicted in the advertisement and the reader. Students working in groups could be given one or a range of advertisements from magazines and asked to comment on the eye contact depicted therein. Exercises like these are designed to draw the attention of students to the significance of eye contact in interpersonal communication as well as to illustrate such contact as one of the cues by which inferences are made.

Turning to television, Len Masterman (1980) suggests three types of eye contact between medium and viewer. These include non-existent contact (as is the case for instance in plays and sport); intermittent (as in discussions and curent affairs); and very close eye contact (of the type established by newsreaders and comperes). An example of medium-viewer contact used to particular effect is provided by the Washington

correspondent of *The Observer*, Andrew Stephen, who writes that American Vice-President Dan Quayle:

> "still bares that famous scared-rabbit look whenever asked a question on which he has not been briefed".

According to *The Observer* writer, Dan Quayle's image adviser, Roger Ailes, has told the Vice-President not to look directly into the cameras when answering difficult questions (*Sunday Star*, Review, May 20, 1990:3). In the viewing of television students could be asked to look out for a range of examples which illustrate both the variety and intended effect of eye contact between viewers and what they observe on screen. Another aspect of eye contact is the interpersonal communication it signifies between the characters or people on view. Robert Baron and Donn Byrne (1981) write that a high level of eye contact for instance tends to be interpreted as a sign of friendliness (except when it becomes a stare) while an unusually low level of contact can be viewed as unfriendly. A deliberate policy of avoiding direct eye-contact between the presenter and viewer could be seen as intended to obviate what might be construed as intimidatory.

In addition to eye contact, body language is another facet of interpersonal communication from which inferences can be made. The dramatisation of body language is one way in which examples of posture and gesture can be shown. The miming of a particular mood (as in, for example, anger, happiness, elation, nervousness or fear) by way of posture, as well as expressions of gesture (such as greetings, thumbs-up or crossed fingers)

could be acted out for interpretation. Changes in body language in a variety of settings such as home, school, at the movies, in an unfamiliar environment or in front of the TV can be presented for observation and discussion too. Posture and gesture can also be looked at by way of advertisements. The body language of models - their posture and gesture - is a feature which could be explored. Connected to body language is the personal distance between people from which interpretations about feeling and attitude can be made.

It is not only what people do but what they wear that can be interpreted as an indication of who or what they are. Clothing or fashion is thus another aspect of interpersonal communication from which inferences can be drawn. Clothing for instance can be viewed as a marker of season, status, gender or place. It can also be indicative of occupation. The meaning of clothing is something which can be looked at by way of having students illustrate what might be worn for instance at home in contrast to school, in summer or winter, to play sport in or attend an interview. Students could also be asked to discuss by way of example the socially constructed connection between clothing and occupation, status or gender. As with eye-contact, posture and gesture, the meaning of clothing and fashion is an aspect of interpersonal communication which can be interpreted by reference to advertisements which appear in print. Exercises involving the observation of clothing on television could be used to elicit comment on the distinction

between newsreaders and the presenter of a music video programme for instance in terms of what they wear. Students could also be shown a number of advertisements or extracts from programmes and asked to comment on the connection between fashion and gender, status or occupation. The use of clothing in stereotypes can be looked at too.

The furniture, props and setting of programmes is another aspect of television by which meaning and myth are conveyed. An article by Howard Polskin provides fairly detailed comment on the breakfast show sets of American TV. Commenting on factors such as colour, furniture, accessories and artwork, Howard Polskin writes that the set of one network's breakfast show looks like a stereotypical middle-class house catering to every materialistic desire while the set of another:

> "looks more like the stage of a high school auditorium a year after the principal embezzled school funds" (*TV Guide*, August 19, 1989:20).

Descriptive viewing is concerned with focussing on those factors intentionally selected for inclusion in what appears on screen. Students could work initially on describing the settings and props depicted in print commercials as a basis for interpreting both how and why such features are selected and constructed for television. A video recording of extracts from various programmes including for instance a situation comedy, magazine, quiz show, drama, variety, police series, soap opera and news could be used as a basis for descriptive viewing of the props and setting shown.

Some additional suggestions for descriptive viewing include an awareness of schedules, logos, titles, and the content of what appears on screen. Programmes are not merely broadcast at random, and an awareness of schedules is intended to take note of what is screened when and why. This could be done with regard to a particular channel, and then looked at across channels, should there be more than one on view. The programmes selected for screening are reflective of the network character or role which the corporation sees for itself in the presentation of its line-up to viewers. (On an interpretive level, the programmes selected for screening, as well as the time at which they are shown, are indicative of not only the network's character, but the myth and morality to which the corporation subscribes). In South Africa, for example, the SABC-TV channels 1 and 4 differ quite considerably in that the latter is predominantly given to entertainment, the former featuring a range, inter alia, of entertainment, documentary, sport, variety and news. The intention behind each channel is different, the viewing market to which they cater distinct. The language division of programmes, with a split between English and Afrikaans on channel 1, is another feature of scheduling on SABC-TV, as are the tendency to solemnity on Sunday and the preponderance of sport. The comparative air time accorded, as well as the programmes selected for screening on the SABC's TV2 and 3, are further examples of scheduling which could be looked at for the information they reveal. In

considering a comparison between schedules it may be possible to detect evidence of competition between channels in what is shown. Commercial television is largely reliant on revenue from advertising and must therefore attract as many viewers for advertisers as possible. The economics of television may thus be responsible for many a decision regarding programme selection and schedule.

In a simulation of network scheduling, students could be placed in a position to design schedules for an imagined channel, detailing what they would place where and why. The schedules for an additional, competitor network could then be considered too. Students could be divided into groups and asked to prepare schedules for either a day or week's viewing for a particular network or channel for which they should also consider a name. The details of a range of programmes - either real or imaginary - could be given to students as a resource for planning such schedules. These could include a mixture of news, documentary, entertainment and other programme styles. What students will be encouraged to do is to arrange those programmes (as well as others they might wish to include) into a structured format explaining what it is they selected for screening at a particular time and why. That students might well follow the structure of schedules with which they are familiar need not detract from the descriptive/interpretive value of such an exercise, however. The planning and discussion of schedules can elicit perceptive comment on

programme structure and format. Students could also be given the programme schedule of an existing channel and asked to design a line-up for a competitor network. Programme schedules are printed on a daily basis in the press and can be copied for use in the classroom.

In the description of television, continuity announcing and logos are further examples of channel distinction. Continuity announcers can either be on-screen presenters or heard as voice overs to what is shown. Logos are representative of the channel they depict, and thus serve as a means of identification. The continuity announcer and logos both have a particular role to play in establishing network identity as well as providing for an informative and/or informatory link between the viewer and programmes. From schedules and logos, one could then look to programme identification in the way of title sequences by which programmes are introduced. Len Masterman writes that along with advertisements, title sequences are television's "most visually interesting phenomenon" (1980:67). While I believe that an observation such as that applies more aptly to music video, the title segment of programmes is a significant source for descriptive viewing. The music, visuals and actual titles screened are selected for particular effect, indicative of the programme of which they are part. While the content or story line of each episode of a programme is usually different, the opening sequence is likely to be the same. This establishes

familiarity for viewers and serves as an indication of what is to come. The title sequence of *The Golden Girls*, for example, establishes not only that the episode which follows is indeed *The Golden Girls*, but also introduces us to the location (both the city of Miami and Golden Girls' house), and characters featured in the show. Each of the characters is identified by the actress's name and there is also visual material of the 'Golden Girls' in various scenes. The theme song, *Thank You For Being a Friend*, which is played throughout the opening scenes, is a reflection of, and pertains to, the relationship between Blanche, Sophia, Dorothy and Rose. The theme music thus neatly complements the visual material shown. Concluding the titles is a characteristic segment of music which heralds the start of the episode screened. The aerial shot of Miami, with title of series superimposed, features not only in the opening sequence, but serves as a link between the commercial breaks and a return to the programme. The introduction to *LA Law* features shots of the upmarket business district of Los Angeles, and then introduces the various characters by showing them at work. The opening sequence thus gives us an idea of where the programme is set, the people involved and what they do, the interaction between characters, and an indication of what the programme is about. Len Masterman (1980) writes that the title sequences of programmes encapsulate both the content of the show that follows and the mythology they convey. If video and television equipment is available for use in the classroom, students could be divided into a number of groups

and shown a selection of title sequences recorded from a range of programmes on TV. Each group could be asked to focus on a particular sequence, given time to discuss this and then present to the class what they observe.

It is not only the opening sequence, but the credits which appear at the end which can be an informative resource to interpreting television. Descriptive viewing of titles by noting the various people and functions involved in the making of an episode or programme for television, can provide insight into the construction by which the medium's products are made. Description thus serves as a first step to awareness of the people, the writers, producers, make-up artists et al, as well as the technical functions and features, such as lighting, cameras and sound, which form part of the process of selective construction of television. As with the screening of titles, the credit sequence of programmes can be recorded and shown. Students could be given a research assignment to find out what those people whose job descriptions are mentioned in the production credits actually do. A number of these such as wardrobe, casting or any of the technical credits listed could be selected for further discussion or research.

One way in which to facilitate attentive viewing is to have viewers watch television with the sound off. This allows for a focus on the visual imagery which appears on screen, presenting viewers with an opportunity to hone in on features such as

camera angles, lighting, props, editing, decor and dress. The manner, make-up, and other distinguishing characteristics of people who appear on television can also be looked at in this way. Descriptive viewing thus serves as a basis for appreciating the manner in which music, verbal narration, or sound can be used to particular effect on television. From programme introductions to ads, and as background, or a means, in almost everything from dramas and documentaries, game shows and sport, to establishing mood, the pervasiveness of music is an aspect of television we may not always be conscious of, but is one which in interpreting television, we cannot ignore. The title sequence of any other extract from television can be shown to students without sound. This will allow for a focus on factors like gesture, the setting, the clothing of characters, facial expression and mood. Concentration on the iconography - the images and objects of programmes - is thus facilitated in this way.

The negotiation of meaning involves not only perception but interpretation of what is seen. An initial focus on the descriptive could be developed by exploring the connotation of images screened. Television does not simply transmit. Our experience of television is a process of interactive interpretation between the meanings the medium conveys and what we construe. What we experience is thus unique in that everything we see is interpreted through our own personal construct system. Similarities in perception could be

described as a result of people having placed the same or similar interpretation on the experiences or objects they have seen. Don Bannister and Fay Fransella (1971) write that where people are similar it is because they construe the implications of events in similar ways. To illustrate this process of connotation the class can be presented with a particular object (such as a chocolate, a piece of sporting equipment, a novel or whatever else might come to the creative mind) and asked to respond in a manner which indicates what that object means. Responses to chocolate could include: "fattening", "yummy", "a cause of pimples", "scrumptious", "creamy", "delicious", "romantic" or "yuck". An exercise like this could be followed by an exploration of both print and televisual commercials which feature the object shown to the class. An advertisement for chocolate, toothpaste, cigarettes, soap or wine could thus be looked at describing the settings, postures, gestures, colour and props which interact to convey a connotative whole. What could be considered is how the interaction or juxtaposition between items suggests that they be interpreted in a particular way. A focus on colour is one example of how connotation could be explored. Depending on context the colour red can be used for instance as a sign of danger, anger or love, yellow a sign of sunshine or warmth. One need only consider the various idioms and phrases associated with colour - as in blue-blooded, purple prose or green with envy - to appreciate the range of interpretations by which colours are construed. In advertisements for a particular product students

could be asked to describe which colours predominate as well as to look at connections betwen colour and factors like occupation, status and gender. Observation and discussion of the use of colour in the clothing worn and settings depicted on television could be considered too. One way of doing this is for a variety of programme extracts to be recorded and shown in class.

An exploration of the descriptive as well as appreciation of connotation in the process of the negotiation of meaning present what I believe to be a sound basis for interpreting television. Having illustrated the practicability of introducing students to description and connotation in the context of perception and interpreting television there are a number of teleconscious themes I intend to explore. Suggestions for the further development of teleconsciousness are presented in the chapter that follows.

Chapter 7:

Developing a Teleconscious Curriculum: Interpretation

Descriptive viewing provides a useful basis for identifying the characteristics of a particular genre. John Fiske writes that television is a "highly 'generic' medium" (1987:109), with comparatively few one-off programmes falling outside established generic categories. According to him:

> "Any one programme will bear the main characteristics of its genre, but it is likely to include some from others" (1987:111).

Ascribing a particular programme to one genre or another involves thus deciding which set of characteristics is the most important (John Fiske, 1987). Newscasts will differ from sitcoms or soaps, and the characteristics of quizz shows recognisably different to those of documentary, drama, music video or ads. While some measure of overlap might occur, the predominant characteristics of a programme are likely to be genre distinct. Discussing soaps, Robert Cathcart (1986) writes that the intention of soap opera is to make the viewer feel part of the soap opera community. Every device is thus used to destroy dramatic distance and invite viewers into what Robert Cathcart describes as "the emotional dimension of interpersonal communication" (1986:208) which is the substance of soaps. My televiewing experience of an episode of the soap opera *Loving*, readily confirms this view. The programme title and network logo are flashed briefly on screen before the episode proper begins. (I use the word 'episode' with caution,

in that each segment of soap opera represents more a slice of the ongoing saga than a self-contained story which forms part of a series). There is no introductory sequence as such, with characters identified, or actors shown. From the title, we are taken right into the action on screen. The introductory title of *Loving*, which takes viewers almost immediately into the programme itself, forms part of the soap opera myth. This myth is designed to draw viewers into the happenings on screen and the absence of any protracted title sequence helps to establish this link. The settings of soaps are contemporary, the language, fashion and social concerns, indicative of today. Clearly evident is an emphasis on facial expression, with extreme close-ups, particularly of the eyes and mouth. The camera of soaps thus works, as Robert Cathcart notes:

> "to bring us physically and emotionally closer to its characters" (1986:214).

Another feature of *Loving* I noted, is that the lives and experience of characters on screen are such that it seems to approximate what viewers might interpret as 'real'. In the world of soaps, the lives of the characters unfold; the nuances, challenges, advances and setbacks, all there for the viewer to see. What teachers could do is to present students with a series of questions designed to elicit an attentive response to an episode or programme viewed. A worksheet like this could include questions about the title sequence as well as settings, props, characters, clothing and gesture focussing on what these are intended to convey. Extracts from a variety of programmes including for instance a newscast, documentary,

situation comedy, chat show or drama could be preceded or followed by questions concerning the distinctive, genre specific features of what is shown. If it is possible to obtain video recordings from a foreign network (possibly even in a language with which students are unfamiliar) these could be screened with students being asked to consider what genre they represent and why.

A connection between the descriptive features I've noted, is the selection process by which they reach the screen. The devices, people, characters or issues selected, are not merely chosen at random, but are used to particular effect, to support the myths they convey. Perhaps the most informative way of illustrating this process is by way of example. When asked in an interview about the video for his song *We Didn't Start the Fire*, Billy Joel replied that the kitchen setting is based on a theory he has that wherever you go in the world:

> "you really don't know what's going on until you get into somebody's kitchen" (*Top 40*, March 1990:25).

According to Billy Joel the heart of a house is the kitchen, the place where everyone feels most comfortable. Commenting on the reason for choosing the kitchen setting, Billy Joel states that the song is dealing with "outside things" with headlines, famous events and pop culture:

> "But to flesh out what the song was really about I thought we should show the inside of life" (*Top 40*, March 1990:25).

Referring to the people and events mentioned in *We Didn't Start the Fire* Billy Joel maintains that if he had to encapsulate

forty years of history that is the way he would do it. (*We Didn't Start the Fire* covers the period 1949 to '89 with two lines per year for the period 1949 to '63. From 1964 to '89 there is one word used to describe the events of each year. 1957 is encapsulated for instance in the verse: "Little Rock, Pasternak, Mickey Mantle, Sputnik, Chou En Lai, Bridge on the River Kwai" while the description for '64 to '89 includes: "Watergate, Punk Rock, Begin, Reagan, Terror on the Airlines, Ayatollas in Iran, Russians in Afghanistan"). The kitchen depicted in the video for *We Didn't Start the Fire* begins in the forties and goes through the fifties, sixties, seventies and eighties. The way in which this movement is shown can be seen in the appliances selected. As Billy Joel puts it:

> "When you see the progression of the kitchen you see the different appliances. And it's just like seeing different eras of cars" (*Top 40*, March 1990:25).

The life going on in the kitchen reflects what the song means in personal terms, what happens in the world being more than just newspaper headlines.

Another, somewhat different example of media selection is given by John Fiske. In discussion of heroes and villains on television, John Fiske (1987) notes that camera distance can be used, for example, to swing our sympathy away from the villains towards the heroes. This is done by having far more extreme close-ups of villains than heroes. John Fiske writes that the usual camera distance on television is a mid-shot to close-up:

> "which brings the viewer into an intimate, comfortable relationship with the characters on the screen" (1987:7).

Extreme close-ups, in contrast, can be used to convey hostility, and become what John Fiske (1987) describes as a way of representing villainy. This is by no means confined to the fictional programmes of television, but is evident in newscasts and other genres as well. In addition to camera angles, there are numerous other devices by which heroes and villains are shown. John Fiske notes that lighting is usually harsh for villains, while soft for heroes; that in editing, heroes are given more time than villains, and that the accent, manner and speech of villains is frequently 'foreign'. The dialogue of heroes and villains is also distinct in that villains are often limited to talking about their plots and schemes, while the conversation of heroes is by no means restricted in this way.

The people selected to appear in advertisements is another example of televisual selection. Presenters as well as the characters features in programmes are also cast for their particular 'look'. Where someone else is chosen to market a product:

> "the person becomes the product they represent when they're on television" (Clive Simkins in *Fair Lady*, September 28, 1988:126).

According to Clive Simkins:

> "It's vital that the individual matches the desired image of the company or product they're selling" (*Fair Lady*, September 28, 1988:126).

An exercise for students is to watch for and describe an advertisement on television which features someone specifically chosen to sell. Much the same can be done in describing the characters, comperes, hosts and presenters whose appearance presumably contributes to the role or image they play.

The selection process of constructing images for television is further illustrated in the examples which follow.

Anne Maggs writes that after about 30-odd animated combinations and extensive research, a South African advertising agency came up with one animal it thought unlike to have adverse connotations for anyone in publicising the October 26 municipal elections (*Weekend Argus*, October 1, 1988:10). Tim Bester of the agency responsible for the advertisement explains that at the outset the idea was to depict two people debating. The use of people was seen as a potential problem, however, in that political connotations would be drawn from whatever races or combinations of people were shown. The use of animals and animation was therefore suggested instead. The first idea for the use of the hare and the tortoise was rejected because of research findings which showed an association of the hare with the ANC and the tortoise with the Conservative Party. In deciding on the characters to be used some forty group discussions were held country wide to test possible options. According to this research where a lion and mouse were shown, for instance, blacks immediately saw themselves as the meek,

downtrodden mouse and the whites as the strong, domineering lion. Tim Bester points out that "fascinatingly" whites saw things the other way around:

> "They thought they were the mouse, threatened by an aggressive lion - the black population" (*Weekend Argus*, October 1, 1988:10).

If a small animal was used in conjunction with a larger one, the larger animal was immediately seen as the aggressor and the smaller one, whichever "population group" was being interviewed at the time. Tim Bester notes that even when two identical dogs were used, with one standing up and one lying down:

> "the dog lying down was seen to be being subjected to pressure while the one standing was seen as the aggressor".

Every animal appeared to mean different things to different people:

> "colouring their perception of the advertisement and the campaign".

Only the squirrel came out "squeaky clean". Tim Bester maintains that squirrels were not only perceived of as cuddly and cute;

> "there was a general belief among black South Africans that squirrels were quite clever and industrious because they stored things for the future."

On the use of humour, Tim Bester states that the lighthearted approach in the commercial was so that the characters could express a serious and controversial message in an "acceptable" way.

The use of animals in advertising is part of the selection process which could be looked at by way of example. Students could be asked to watch for, describe and discuss a range of advertisements which feature animals. A number of advertisements such as this could also be recorded for viewing in class.

Katy Macdonald "looks behind the scenes at the making of the Fiat Uno ad" in an article in the *Sunday Star* magazine supplement *Sunday* (May 20, 1990). In a document handed out at the final pre-production meeting for the advertisement, the head of the production house responsible for filming the commercial Jonathan Parkinson, states that his intention is to make people associate the car with the "fun, performance, excitement and style of Italy" (Sunday Star, *Sunday*, May 20, 1990:14). The advertisement is to depict a stylish executive driving his Uno to an Italian party, "enjoying the party with an equally stylish girl, then taking her home - in the Uno, of course." In the commercial features of the car will be synchronised with human actions to amuse and inform:

> "The leading lady winking at her boyfriend will be followed by a shot of the car's indicator flicking; spaghetti being swirled round a fork by a shot of the car whipping round a corner on two wheels; a guy eating a strong chilli by the powerful Uno accelerating and shooting across the screen."

A bottle being pulled from a wine rack will be synchronised with the Uno emerging from an archway.

At the pre-production meeting Walter Pike, advertising representative for Nissan, South African manufacturer of the car, expresses concern that the clothing selected by the wardrobe manager for the extras might be too trendy. The use of down-to-earth people in contrast to high flyers is discussed and it is decided that a combination of character types will be used. Selection of extras by way of videotape is then made. A real Italian waitress is chosen to play herself as she is seen to be "sufficiently flamboyant and bossy". One of the people who auditioned for a role as a waiter is pulled out at the last minute because it is discovered that he had acted in a commercial for another car.

Describing details on set where the party scenes are to be filmed Katy Macdonald writes that the only black people around are carrying furniture and making tea - there is not even a black extra. According to Walter Pike:

> "The black market is incredibly small because not many can afford a car. We haven't expressly excluded blacks, but the whole ad is Italian flavoured" (Sunday Star, *Sunday*, May 20, 1990:16).

The buffet at the party consist of huge crusty loaves, breadsticks, olives, and luscious fruit, red and green peppers, red and green tagliatelle, red and green chillis.

The screening of this Uno advertisement to a class could be accompanied by a series of questions pertaining to:

* how the "Italian-flavour is achieved (the use of red and green food, for instance, is symbolic of the colours of the

Italian flag, and the "look" of the lead characters, the waitress and voluble extras could also be seen as contributing to the overall flavour);

* what settings are used and why;
* the posture, gesture and dress of both the leads and the extras;
* the synchronisation of visual material and the car.

Another behind-the-scenes look at the making of a commercial is described by Paula Fray in her report of a video which details the making of an advertisement for British Airways (*Sunday Star*, May 6, 1990:13). The commercial features a "face" made up of people, which becomes a "map" of the world. In the advertisement:

> "Hundreds of red-clad swimmers cut through clear water and move out of a lake on a desert plain in the formation of a perfect pair of lips."

Somewhere in a city hundreds of blue-clad people form an "eye", an "ear" crosses a field, and they are joined by a "nose" while the rest of the "face" is filled in by figures in white. The eye then winks and the lips smile. Everyone had to wear exactly the same shade of red, white and blue to match British Airways livery. The creative director of the company which devised the commercial says that they just hit on an idea one day;

> "I don't know where it came from."

What impressed the airline about the idea for the advertisement was the use of people to portray a message which could be

globally understood. Director Hugh Hudson was chosen "for his sense of dramatic visual image; Malcolm Mclaren, known for his 'rocking' of operas" to produce the soundtrack, and Judy Chabola, who organised the official ceremonies for the Los Angeles Olympics, for choreography. Locations in the American state of Utah were chosen and most of the commercial was shot at three Utah locations with the lips being filmed at Lake Powell, Arizona. With the permission of the Utah State Office of Education school students were used for the "face". The use of students was designed to overcome one of the problems faced by multi-nationals. Had Equity artists been used the commercial would be banned in some countries.

The imagery selected for advertisements is the topic of an article by Carolyn McGibbon who writes of the commercial for beer in which accountants are shown as "short-armed, little grey men who are dull, staid, boring, predictable and concerned only with the numerics of life" (*Sunday Star*, October 16, 1988:3). A row of "grey, stuffed suits" are sitting at a bar when one dares to be different. He not only orders something other than his regular drink but offers to buy the barman a beer too. At this the barman faints. Robin Goetzsche, group manager for Hansa, the beer which is featured in the commercial, maintains that the advertisement is all in good fun. The image of the accountants is used to make people smile:

> "and that's why it succeeds".

According to him the advertisement is aimed at the Hansa market which is seen to be more sophisticated with a higher education and higher income than beer drinkers who drank more popular brands.

Beer commercials which project an exclusively macho male image have been criticised by women demanding that South African Breweries alter its advertising to acknowledge that women also enjoy beer. SAB brand manager Bruce Starke maintains that a beer which incorporates female imagery "is doomed to failure" (Weekend Argus, *Weekender*, April 14, 1990:5). According to SAB manager Adrian Botha, their intention is not to discriminate:

> "Although we know that women do like and drink our beer we can't be expected to be crusaders for their cause."
>
> "Our major market, the black, male market is made up of extremely conservative individuals who don't take kindly to the notion of women drinking our products. If we depicted females drinking beer in our adverts we would risk antagonising a large part of society."

University of the Witwatersrand Business School lecturer Chris von Ulmenstein does not accept SAB's argument. South African Breweries, she says, has tried to lead the market in other respects because this has suited its politically liberal image. Her belief is that the company fails to represent women because its hierarchy is dominated by men.

The examples I've quoted are indicative of the values and viewpoints by which particular selections are made. Teleconsciousness is concerned with not only describing and

interpreting what appears on television but in understanding the process by which images reach the screen. What applies in the construction of advertisements for television is similar for other genres.

Sunday Star writer Katy Macdonald provides some interesting background to programme construction in an article on an SABC screened documentary commemorating the centenary of the Chamber of Mines. Commissioned by the Chamber itself, the programme is, according to a partner in the company responsible for making the show, a look at the highlights of the Chamber's existence. In response to a question as to whether the documentary dealt with labour relations, film company partner Richard Beynon replied:

> "We couldn't devote more than a couple of minutes to that, but we did have an interview with the Chamber's labour relations adviser."

And when asked about interviews with miners, he added:

> "Ultimately it is about the miner himself (sic) but, no, there aren't any interviews with miners" (*Sunday Star*, October 22, 1989).

This example gives an idea of what the programme compilers selected to include, and what, by implication (and/or intention) they chose to ignore. The example cited is reflective of how content selection works to be part of, or establish, a mythic construct or particular world view. In interpreting the selective construction involved, it may be instructive to consider what such a programme might look like if commissioned by a labour union or the miners themselves.

All programmes are constructs, and a teleconscious curriculum is concerned with demystifying the process and products by which mythic constructs are presented as comprehensive or real. The genre perhaps most given to pretension of this kind is news.

Pointing to a purported drop in ratings when networks in the United States broadcast news which contains political or institutional bias, journalist Tony Jackman contends that Americans are accustomed to the news as it is, as opposed to the news as the networks would like it to be (*Weekend Argus*, Weekender, September 26, 1987). A process of mediation from 'happening' to screen, news is a construct which cannot be anything but what and/or how the network concocts it to be. The very act of selection, as well as the process by which items are mediated and packaged for screen, involves bias. One of the ways in which such bias becomes evident is in the comparison between media in terms of how stories are told. (Even before the actual telling, however, is the question as to what is selected for appearance on screen.) In March 1990, for example, both BBC and ITN television news broadcasts in Britain included footage of "security forces" in the nominally independent "homeland" of Bophuthatswana whipping protesters as they herded them into the backs of vans. According to a report in *The Argus*, the BBC newscast included interviews with Bophuthatswana citizens who said that they would rather live in the "new South Africa", and that the "homeland" should be re-

incorporated into South Africa (March 9, 1990:4). On SABC-TV, no air time was given to people protesting against the Bophuthatswana regime. Only the homeland president was accorded the opportunity to explain his position and view. What was shown of the protesters were images of fist-clenched mobs. No attempt was made by the SABC to sketch the background to the demonstrations, no reference to the possible collapse of the homeland system and its implications was made. What was indeed evident in SABC newscasts was the suggestion of protest being externally incited, that the demonstrations were ANC-inspired.

Another example of network bias can be seen in an SABC-TV report on a cabinet meeting held to discuss differences between the then State President Pieter Botha and the Nationalist cabinet. In viewing the item, one had little sense of what the *Cape Times* described as "an angry and suspicious" President Botha having plunged the National Party into a pre-election crisis (August 12, 1989:1). The SABC-TV news report, broadcast on August 12, 1989, contained no mention of what was described in a *Weekend Argus* report as:

> "the confusion and disunity in government ranks slated by opposition leaders as shocking and bizarre" (Saturday/Sunday *Argus*, August 12/13, 1989:4).

In contrast to the *Argus* description of ministers arriving at the meeting "grim-faced" and sternly dismissing questions with "no comment" (August 12/13, 1989:1), the SABC-TV reporter referred to the members of cabinet as "looking relaxed". In

this way, the reporter's comments were used to imply that all is well, and that there is no crisis when, in effect, the film footage showed the ministers looking anything but relaxed. The narration of newscasts can thus be a particularly revealing source for assessing bias in the way in which a story is, literally, told. An example of this is an SABC-TV report of a documentary which appeared on British TV. Before crossing to the SABC-TV London correspondent, Freek Robinson, the newscaster stated that response to the documentary by Peter Hain on apartheid in South African sport had been muted. This could be interpreted to imply that the programme had little impact, and was therefore ineffectual. The January 10, 1990, SABC newscast then crossed to Freek Robinson, who began his report by saying that the documentary was, "in all sincerity", one-sided. What Freek Robinson appears to be doing here is to establish himself as impartial observer, and in so doing, to emphasize just how utterly distorted the documentary must be. In constructing himself as 'sincere', the reporter could also be seen as inviting viewers to share in, and believe, what he has to say. The semblance of mock irritation is evident too in Freek Robinson's comment that the one newspaper report on the programme was in the *Guardian*. "I guess one could have expected that," is what the SABC-TV correspondent had to say. The implication here is that one could so easily anticipate or predict what the response of this 'leftist' newspaper would be. Similar reference has not, to my knowledge, been made with regard to newspapers which publish comment in line with, and

used in support of, the world view as propagated by the SABC. Much was made by Freek Robinson of Peter Hain's 'illegal' entry into South Africa to make the film. No mention was made of the reasons for Peter Hain being barred from the country. What could, as a result, be inferred is that Peter Hain set out in clandestine fashion to deceive and distort. Peter Hain was not interviewed, only those who reiterated the view on the "one-sidedness" of the programme were allowed their say. In addition, only those who supported unconditional sporting contact with South Africa were given an opportunity to speak. The very issues which the documentary considered were thus totally ignored. My overall impression is one of SABC intention to present Peter Hain as a self-seeking provocateur, who entered South Africa by devious means to make a programme so utterly malicious and based on spurious grounds.

Evidence of bias through language can be seen too in the March 21, 1990 SABC-TV news reference to the "historic" first meeting between South African President Frederick de Klerk and Soviet Foreign Minister Eduard Shevardnadze in Namibia. The use of "historic" places a particular construction on what is described, presenting the event with deliberate intent. In the same newscast, an 'unrest report' included the statement that police "had to use teargas". In this, as with similar references to police being "forced to open fire", or whatever, the passive construction implies that the police be absolved from responsibility from choosing their actions - they had to.

We are not informed as to why, but are simply expected to accept that such action is both necessary and justified. It is language like this which is deliberately used as a means to mystification, language designed to deceive or conceal. Described as deceptive, evasive, euphemistic, confusing or self-contradictory doublespeak is viewed as language which has the potential for pernicious socio-political consequences (William Lutz, *Cape Times*, November 20, 1989:9). William Lutz writes that the use of words to conceal meaning is both pervasive, perverse and dangerous to democracy (*Cape Times*, October 26, 1989:5). Examples of doublespeak in both advertising (what exactly do advertisers mean by reference to "new", "improved" and other such claims?), and news could be used as the basis for classroom discussion in groups. A media watchbook could also be introduced into which students can record examples of doublespeak they see or hear. Such a watchbook can be used for the other exercises I've mentioned too.

Somewhat more abstract, but another of the ways in which people make sense of the world in language, is by use of metaphor. Described by John Fiske as being not merely "literary decoration" or "stimulants to the individual imagination", metaphors, he writes, are "widespread and basic sense-making mechanisms" (1987:291). For David Caplan, metaphors extend as well as interpret and classify experience:

> "giving situations both a form and an ordering significance they might not otherwise have" (1985:238).

Metaphors are thus a means of constructing the world, interpretations which have a direct bearing on the manner in which we act. George Lakoff and Mark Johnson maintain that in all aspects of life, we define reality in terms of metaphor and then act on the basis of those metaphors. According to them:

> "We draw inferences, set goals, make commitments and execute plans all on the basis of how we in part structure our experience, consciously and unconsciously by means of metaphor" (1980:158).

In the reporting of politics, for example, it has been noted that war is the commonest metaphor, followed by drama and sport (John Fiske, 1987). John Fiske writes that making sense of politics by metaphors of sport or war constructs politics as a conflict between parties, while the metaphor of drama makes sense of it as a stage upon which talented individuals perform as stars. The war metaphor features prominently in media representation of drugs. Military jargon such as the marshalling of task forces to defeat the scourge of drugs, is commonly used. Drugs are thus placed in a metaphoric combat zone - the suggested response to their presence being war.

In addition to the technical devices and language which the medium of television can use, censorship is another means of selection by which televisual material is structured for screen. Ian Gray writes of a programme on media literacy, broadcast by the SABC, in which the narrator comments:

> "Here is the news - what a familiar and reassuring sound that is. We have all grown up with it. We have all learnt to trust it. Television news is especially reassuring because we can see the news before our very eyes" (*Sunday Star*, July 27, 1986:5).

What viewers did not hear, because it was cut by the SABC, was the narrator continuing:

> "But in this programme we will see that the news, any news, print or visual, is like fiction, something that can be made up."

Reference to media restrictions and their effect, as well as a statement that it is a great fallacy to believe that there is such a thing as objectivity in reporting, was also excised (*Sunday Star*, July 27, 1986:5). In this instance, censorship can be seen as a deliberate attempt to manipulate the mediation of knowledge, or expression of views. The example referred to is also indicative of how censorship forms part of the construction of myth. Examples of censorship are also reflective of the myths to which the network subscribes. The video, for instance, of one of the most popular songs in South Africa in 1988, was not featured in a programme of the Top 20 international album hits of that year. Official comment from the SABC on the absence of the hit song *Beds are Burning*, by Australian group Midnight Oil, was that the video was not shown due to a "technical problem" (*Sunday Tribune*, January 8, 1989:5). The 'unofficial reason', and one which I am inclined to believe, given the SABC's not infrequent reference to "technical problems" as the reason for the non-screening of some shows, is the group's political stance, and confirmation by their record company that a percentage of album profits were

being donated to the ANC. In 1985, the SABC banned all Stevie Wonder's music for a while after the singer accepted an Academy Award in Nelson Mandela's name. Previously restricted material began receiving airplay on SABC radio in about May 1990. This is indicative, I believe, of a mythic shift on the part of the Corporation, an echo in line with the socio-political mythology to which it subscribes.

The issue of shifts and echoes could be looked at with reference to not only networks but advertising and the depiction of characters in programmes as well. David Lipsey writes that women's 'power' in advertisements has changed because their commercial power has changed. According to him "crude calculations of self interest" have dictated that advertisers must adapt or lose customers (*New Society*, August 21, 1987:12). With reference to changes in the depiction of women in programmes on television, Karen Stabiner writes that it would be nice to announce that the industry has experienced a mass enlightenment - that the people, most of them men, who decide what we see - have suddenly embraced sexual equality as a personal philosphy. But this is not so:

> "The industry has seen the light, all right, but it is the light of good business" (*Cosmopolitan*, April 1987:106).

In the South African context, another aspect of mythic shifts and echoes can be seen in the racial interaction depicted on screen. With particular regard to commercials the creative director of an advertising agency, Peter Badenhorst, maintains

that integration has become more relaxed in line with the general mood in the country (*City Late*, December 1989/January 1990).

By way of example it has been my intention to illustrate how teleconsciousness could be applied. In concluding this chapter I would like to suggest some additional ways by which interpreting television could be explored. The exercises which follow are designed to facilitate an awareness of television, its genres and selective construction, by simulation. The unavailability of video equipment is thus no impediment to appreciating the workings of TV. Simulation of the construction involved in the making of programmes for television can be a useful exercise in facilitating an understanding of the process by which televisual imagery is made. A focus on news could have students working in groups to produce a news programme. Various aspects of newscasts such as local, international, economic, weather and sports news could be assigned to particular groups. The functions of newsreader, producer, camera people and other technical crew could also be designated from amongst the class. Students would be asked to prepare a newscast for presentation at a specified time. Props, clothing, visuals, settings and sound could be used. Students could be asked to select their own news items or base their newscast on a selection chosen from a variety of stories from newspapers which the teacher could give them. In presenting students with a range of news stories from various

sources the teacher could explain that these represent what has come through to the network by telex and other means such as the station's own news reporting. Students are then to select and script into a news format a programme for broadcast. What might be possible is to have students construct an actual frame which serves as a TV screen. What they prepare for presentation could thus be designed to fit within such a structure giving students a practical idea of how televisual material is framed for production on screen.

In making a documentary a theme in any school subject could be the focus for a programme on TV. Selecting a particular subject or theme students could be asked to present it in programme format for TV. Producers, scriptwriters, etc. could be chosen and the programme researched and then made.

Insight into the making and mythology of advertising can be explored in a number of ways. One such example is to have students devise an advertisement for presentation in class. Props, clothing and other materials like visuals and sound can be used. To make such an exercise more fun, the teacher can on the basis for instance of the names of people within a group allocate advertising agency titles to each group. Students would be given time to prepare their advertisements before presentation to the class. Print advertisements could also be used. Students could be given an advertisement - either individually or on the basis of an advertisement per group -

together with a series of questions which focus on the aim of the advertisement, the appeals which are made, the devices both linguistic and visual which are used, and the images, people, clothing, colour and manner shown. Other questions could draw on interpreting the visual imagery of an advertisement considering the reasons for what has been selected, left out or intentionally ignored. The manner in which a competitor of someone working from a different perspective might respond to the commercial could be considered too. Here students could be asked to design such an advertisement. An example of this is a response to a cigarette advertisement from the point of view of a competitor, environmentalist or health authority.

Another aspect of genre which could be worked on for presentation is the dramatisation of an English setwork for TV. A producer, actors and people concerned with clothing, make up, settings and props could be selected and asked to present an extract of drama within the televisual frame. Quizzes, panel discussions and debates could also be structured for presentation on classroom TV.

Presentation of the genres suggested could be followed by reflection on the process by which the programmes were made. This could be done by classroom discussion and/or questionnaire.

In addition to simulation the interpretation of television by way of other media is an approach which could be considered too. Articles from newspapers or magazines, as well as cartoons, are examples of these.

Chapter 8:

Conclusion

My intention in writing this dissertation was to explore the significance of television to me as a prospective teacher. What I wished to develop was an informed understanding of the medium and to consider how such awareness could be pragmatically applied. Of interest to me was the feasibility of a creative response by educators to television.

My approach to research is informed by an understanding of the world that eschews notions of objectivity and absolute truth in favour of reality as a personal construct. One of the implications of such an approach is that research as I see it is by no means concerned with a matter of fact finding, but to explore. There is thus no truth or correct answer to my questions about television. What I write is based on the selections I make in the construction of my research. My role as researcher is thus similar in many respects to the producer of a programme for television. Like the producer who has to consider the framekwork presented by a particular genre, as well as the viewer, logistics and other concerns, this dissertation is as much a result of the selection process as the colours, gestures, soundtrack and characters who appear on screen. What I select is informed by by my experience of the world and the myths by which my selections are made. My views about television and the pragmatic potential I see for the

medium in education are therefore partial. Dale Spender writes that all knowledge, every record is by definition partial, and the issue is to acknowledge the partiality, the prejudice - and the politics -;

> "to point clearly to the omissions instead of passing them off as the full story" (1985:4).

What this implies is that where there can only be incomplete accounts;

> "it is not constructive to condemn an account for its incompleteness" (Dale Spender, 1985:4).

I could have included discussion on whether teleconsciousness in the South African context is an exclusive, "white" preserve. I could also have focussed on teleconsciousness across the curriculum in much the same way that Douglas Young (1987) refers to language across the curriculum. Details about semiotics and other approaches to understanding the meanings of television could have been detailed too. Like the producer constructing a programme for television for every perspective I chose to include there is likely to be an example or angle omitted in the presentation of my research. The constructs, the myths and morality of the reader will no doubt determine what it is I am perceived of having consciously or otherwise excluded or chosen to ignore. My suggested approach to interpreting television could thus be applied to the process and product of research in much the same way.

In presenting a framework for interpreting television, my intention was to illustrate by way of example how such an

approach could be explored. I regard my suggestions as recommendations and not a prescription of how interpreting television should be applied. My research is concerned with not only content but the curriculum practice by which interpreting television occurs. I believe that the curriculum best suited to interpreting television is one by which the accent is on process in contrast to product and on learner centred discussion rather than teacher dominant transmission. The curriculum I envisage is one which facilitates creative awareness and encourages explorations of the mind. The question for educators is whether they wish to be part of the practice of mindlessness or whether they see a place for themselves in a curriculum which challenges, an educational approach which can be responsive to, as well as a means to, creative and constructive change.

Len Masterman writes that the fact that television continues to be ignored by vast numbers of schools;

> "is indeed an indictment of the conservatism and inflexibility of many educational establishments and of their inability to respond to developments and trends of major significance within society" (1980:13).

Ignoring the medium is to deprive learners of a resource for education of an exceptional kind.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Heribert ADAM and Kogila MOODLEY, 1987: *South Africa without Apartheid*, Cape Town, Maskew Miller Longman.

David L. ALTHEIDE, 1976; *Creating Reality*, Beverly Hills, Sage Publications.

Dennis ALTMAN, 1981: *Coming out in the Seventies*, Boston, Alyson.

Manuel ALVARADO, Robin GUTCH and Tana WOLLEN, 1987: *Learning the Media*, Hampshire, Macmillan Education.

Jean ANYON, 1981: "Ideology and United States History Textbooks", in Roger Dale, Geoff Esland and Ros Fergusson (eds), *Education and the State, Vol II*, Sussex, The Falmer Press.

The Argus, April 12, 1989.

The Argus, June 20, 1989.

The Argus, July 4, 1989: 3.

The Argus, August 25, 1989: 25.

The Argus, March 9, 1990.

Norman ATKINSON, 1983: "Curriculum as Decision-Making" in A.P. Hunter, M.J. Ashley and C.J. Millar (eds), *Education Curriculum and Development*, University of Cape Town.

Peter BADENHORST, 1990: in Amanda Horowitz, "Through the looking glass", *City Late*, December 1989/January 1990.

Don BANNISTER, 1979: "Personal Construct Theory and Politics" in Peter Stringer and Don Bannister (eds), *Constructs of Sociality and Individuality*, London, Academic Press.

Don BANNISTER and Fay FRANSELLA, 1971: *Inquiring Man*, Harmondsworth, Penguin Education.

Robert BARON and Donn BYRNE, 1981: *Social Psychology*, Boston, Allyn and Bacon, Inc.

David BARRAT, 1986: *Media Sociology*, London, Tavistock Publications.

Anthony W. BATES, 1983: "Adult Learning from Educational Television: The Open University Experience", in Michael

J.A. Howe (ed), *Learning From Television*, London, Academic Press, Inc.

Thomas A. BAUER, 1984: "Austria: theory and practice of media education", in *Media Education*, Paris, UNESCO.

Andrew BEAR, 1984: "The Myth of Television Violence", in *Media Information Australia*, No 33, August 1984.

John BERGER, 1986: *Ways of Seeing*, London, Penguin.

Peter L. BERGER and Bobby GODSELL, 1988: *A Future South Africa*, Cape Town, Human and Rousseau Tafelberg.

Tim BESTER, 1988: in Anne Maggs, "Stoffel and the R5-m squirrel", *Weekend Argus*, October 1, 1988.

Emile BOONZAIER, 1988: "'Race' and the race paradigm" in Emile Boonzaier and John Sharp (eds), *South African Keywords*, Cape Town, David Philip.

Joshua BRAUN, 1989: in Cheetah Haysom, "Will Alex leave Eva for Egypt", *Weekend Argus*, September 2, 1989.

Stephen BROOKFIELD, 1986: "Media Power and the Development of Media Literacy: An Adult Education Interpretation" in *Harvard Educational Review*, Vol 56, No 2, May 1986.

John M. BROUGHTON and Marta K. ZAHAYKEVICH, 1983: "The Peace Movement Threat", in Douglas Sloan (ed), *Education for Peace and Disarmament: Toward a Living World*, New York, Teachers College Press.

Sakkie BURGER, 1989: in Tony Jackman, Watchword, *The Argus*, Tonight, June 19, 1989.

Cape Times, September 9, 1986: 6.

Cape Times, April 13, 1989 ("Unfair SABC").

Cape Times, August 12, 1989: 1.

Cape Times, May 4, 1990: 2 ("Independent TV News?")

Fritjof CAPRA, 1987: *The Turning Point*, London, Flamingo.

Fritjof CAPRA, 1988: *Uncommon Wisdom*, London, Flamingo.

Edmund CARPENTER, 1986: "The New Languages" in Gary Gumpert and Robert Cathcart (eds), *INTER/MEDIA*, New York, Oxford University Press.

Robert CATHCART, 1986: "Our soap opera friends", Robert Cathcart and Gary Gunpert (eds), INTER/MEDIA, Oxford University Press, New York.

Simon CHAPMAN and Garry EGGER, 1983: "Myth in cigarette advertising and health promotion", in Howard Davis and Paul Walton (eds), *Language, Image, Media*, Oxford, Basil Blackwell.

James W. CHESEBRO, 1986: "Communication, Values, and Popular Television Series - An Eleven Year Assessment", in Gary Gumpert and Robert Cathcart (eds), *INTER/MEDIA*, New York, Oxford University Press.

David B. COPLAN, 1985: *In Township Tonight*, Johannesburg, Ravan Press.

Cedric CULLINGFORD, 1984: *Children and Television*, Hampshire, Gower.

James CURRAN, Michael GUREVITCH and Janet WOOLLACOTT, 1985: "The study of the Media: theoretical approaches", in Michael Gurevitch, Tony Bennet, James Curran and Janet Woollacott (eds) *Culture, Society and the Media*, London, Methuen and Co.

Peter DAHLGREN, 1981: "TV News as a social relation", in *Media, Culture and Society*, Vol 3, No 3, July 1981.

Kath DAVIES, Julienne DICKEY and Teresa STRATFORD (eds) 1987: *Out of Focus*, London, The Women's Press.

Dennis K. DAVIS and Stanley J. BARAN, 1981: *Mass Communication and Everyday Life*, Belmont, Wadsworth.

Melvin L. DE FLEUR and Everette E. DENNIS, 1981: *Understanding Mass Communication*, Boston, Houghton Mifflin Company.

John DOCKER, 1983: "Give them facts. The Modern Gradgrinds", in *Media Information Australia*, No 30, November 1983.

Lesley DORMEN and Peter EDIDIN, 1989: "Original Spin", in *Psychology Today*, July/August, 1989.

Barbara DU BOIS, 1983: "Passionate Scholarship: notes on values, knowing and method in feminist social science", in Gloria Bowles and Renate Duelli Klein (eds), *Theories of Women's Studies*, London, Routledge and Kegan Paul.

Hanneke DU PREEZ, 1983: *Weekend Argus*, May 28, 1983.

Peter DU PREEZ, 1979: "Politics and Identity in South Africa", in Peter Stringer and Don Bannister (eds), *Constructs of Sociality and Individuality*, London, Academic Press.

Gillian DYER, 1982: *Advertising as Communication*, London, Methuen.

Margrit EICHLER, 1988: *Nonsexist Research Methods*, Boston, Allen and Unwin.

Jaime ESCALANTE, 1988: in Elaine Woo, *Los Angeles Times*, July 29, 1988.

Michael FATHERS, 1988: "Many a tear has to fall, but it's all in the TV network game", *Weekend Argus*, Weekender, October 1, 1988: 2.

Marilyn FERGUSON, 1980: *The Aquarian Conspiracy*, London, Granada.

John FISKE, 1982: *Introduction to Communication Studies*, London, Methuen and Co. Ltd.

John FISKE, 1987: *Television Culture*, London, Methuen.

John FISKE and John HARTLEY, 1985: *Reading Television*, London, Methuen and Co. Ltd.

Paula FRAY, 1990: "Hundreds form a giant face to speak across the globe", *Sunday Star*, May 6, 1990.

Jonathan L. FREEDMAN, 1988: "Television Violence and Aggression: What the evidence shows", in Stuart Oskamp (ed), *Television as a Social Issue*, Newbury Park, Sage, Publications.

Paulo FREIRE and Ira SHOR, 1987: *A Pedagogy for Liberation*, Hampshire, Macmillan.

Marilyn FRENCH, 1985: *Beyond Power*, London, Jonathan Cape.

James J. GALLAGHER, 1975: *Teaching the Gifted Child*, Boston, Allyn and Bacon, Inc.

Roland GANGES, 1988: in Elaine Woo, *Los Angeles Times*, July 29, 1988.

Herman GRAY, 1986: "Television and the new black man: black male images in prime time situation comedy", in *Media Culture and Society*, Vol 8, No 2, April 1986.

Ian GRAY, 1986: "SABC admit: we changed 'Media' script", *Sunday Star*, Review, August 27, 1989: 9.

Bradley S. GREENBERG, 1988: "Some Uncommon Television Images and the Drench Hypothesis", in Stuart Oskamp (ed), *Television as a Social Issue*, Newbury Park, Sage Publications.

Maxine GREENE, 1978: *Landscapes of Learning*, New York, Teachers College Press.

Maxine GREENE, 1983: "Education and Disarmament", in Douglas Sloan (ed) *Education for Peace and Disarmament: Toward a Living World*, New York, Teachers College Press.

Patricia Marks GREENFIELD, 1984: *Mind and Media*, Aylesbury, Fontana.

Christine GRIFFIN, 1986: "Qualitative Methods and Female Experience: Young Women from School to the Job Market", in Sue Wilkinson (ed), *Feminist Social Psychology*, Milton Keynes, Open University Press.

Gary GUMPERT and Robert CATHCART (eds), 1986: *INTER/MEDIA*, New York, Oxford University Press.

Stuart HALL, 1984: "Encoding/Decoding" in Stuart Hall, Dorothy Hobson, Andrew Lowe and Paul Willis (eds), *Culture, Media, Language*, London, Hutchinson and Co.

John HARTLEY, 1985: *Understanding News*, London, Methuen and Co.

Terence HAWKES, 1978: *Structuralism and Semiotics*, London, Methuen.

James HEMMING, 1980: "The Needs of Adolescents Today", in *Association of Educational Psychologists Journal*, Vol 5, No 4, September 1980.

Barrie HOPSON and Mike SCALLY, 1981: *Lifeskills Teaching*, London, McGraw Hill.

Rowell HUESMANN and Leonard D. ERON, 1983: "Factors Influencing the Effect of Television Violence on Children", in Michael J.A. Howe (ed) *Learning from Television*, London, Academic Press, Inc.

HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL, 1985: The South African Society: Realities and Future Prospects, Pretoria, Human Sciences Research Council.

Tony JACKMAN, 1987: Telepreview, *The Argus*, Tonight, August 27, 1987.

Tony JACKMAN, 1987: "How about some really honest TV news?" *Weekend Argus*, Weekender, September 26: 1987: 2.

Fred E. JANDT and James DARSEY, 1981: "Coming out as a Communicative Process", in James W. Chesebro (ed) *Gayspeak*, New York, The Pilgrim Press.

Peter KALLAWAY, 1987: "Education and the State: From Mass Education to Bantu Education to People's Education - Some Preliminary Notes", in Douglas Young and Robert Burns (eds) *Education at the Crossroads*, University of Cape Town.

Phyllis A. KATZ, 1988: "Foreword", in Stuart Oskamp (ed), Television as a Social Issue, Newbury Park, Sage Publications.

Elihu KATZ and Tamar LIEBES, 1986: "Decoding *Dallas*: Notes from a cross cultural study", in Gary Gumpert and Robert Cathcart (eds), *INTER/MEDIA*, New York, Oxford University Press.

The Very Reverend Edward KING, 1987: "Tutu is a man of peace", *Cape Times*, June 25, 1987.

Celia KITZINGER, 1986: "Introducing and Developing Q as a Feminist Methodology: A Study of Accounts of Lesbianism", in Sue Wilkinson (ed), *Feminist Social Psychology*, Milton Keynes, Open University Press.

Renate Duelli KLEIN, 1983: "How to do what we want to do: thoughts about feminist methodology", in Gloria Bowles and Renate Duelli Klein (eds), *Theories of Women's Studies*, London, Routledge and Kegan Paul.

Gunther KRESS, 1983a: "Media Analysis and the Study of Discourse", in *Media Information Australia*, No 28, May 1983.

Gunther KRESS, 1983b: "Linguistic and Ideological Transformations in News Reporting", in Howard David and Paul Walton (eds), *Language, Image, Media*, Oxford, Basil Blackwell.

George LAKOFF and Mark JOHNSON, 1980: *Metaphors we live by*, University of Chicago Press.

John LANGER, 1981: "Television's 'personality system'", in *Media, Culture and Society*, Vol 3, No 4, October 1981.

John LANGER, 1983: "Broadcast Forecast: Wither Weather", in *Media Information Australia*, No 30, November 1983.

Ellen J. LANGER and Alison PIPER, 1988: "Television from a Mindful/Mindless Perspective", in Stuart Oskamp (ed),

Television as a Social Issue, Newbury Park, Sage Publications.

Basil LE CORDEUR, 1986: *The Argus*, August 7, 1986: 17.

David LIPSEY, 1987: "A black mark for advertisers", *New Society*, August 21, 1987.

Shearon A. LOWERY and Melvin L. DE FLEUR, 1988: *Milestones in Mass Communication Research*, New York, Longman.

William LUTZ, 1989: "Prof blasts Pentagon's linguistic perverts", *Cape Times*, October 26, 1989.

William LUTZ, 1989: "Exxon gets doublespeak award", *Cape Times*, November 20, 1989.

Katy MACDONALD, 1989: *Sunday Star*, October 22, 1989.

Katy MACDONALD, 1990: "They shoot ads don't they?", *Sunday Star*, Sunday, May 20, 1990.

Brendon MAHER (ed), 1969: *Clinical Psychology and Personality*, New York, John Wiley and Sons, Inc.

Judi MARSHALL, 1986: "Exploring the Experiences of Women Managers: Towards Rigour in Qualitative Methods", in Sue Wilkinson (ed), *Feminist Social Psychology*, Milton Keynes, Open University Press.

Len MASTERMAN, 1980: *Teaching about television*, London, Macmillan.

Len MASTERMAN, 1983: "Media Education in the 1980's", in *Journal of the University Film and Video Association*, Vol 35, No 3, Summer 1983.

Edgar MAURICE, 1983: "The Curriculum and the Crisis in the Schools", in A.P. Hunter, M.J. Ashley and C.J. Millar (eds), *Education Curriculum and Development*, University of Cape Town.

Neil McALEER, 1989: "On Creativity", in *Omni*, April 1989.

Carolyn McGIBBON, 1988: "Accountants are people too", *Sunday Star*, October 16, 1988.

Marshall McLUHAN, Kathryn HUTCHON and Eric McLUHAN, 1980: *Media Messages and Language*, Skokie, National Textbook Co.

Barrie McMAHON and Robyn QUIN, 1986: *Real Images*, Melbourne, MacMillan.

Richard McROBERTS, 1987a: Media Workshop Vol 1: Words, Melbourne, Macmillan.

Richard McROBERTS, 1987b: *Media Workshop Vol 2: Images*, Melbourne, Macmillan.

Diana M. MEEHAN, 1988: "The Strong-Soft Woman: Manifestations of the Androgyne in Popular Media", in Stuart Oskamp (ed), *Television as a Social Issue*, Newbury Park, Sage Publications.

Joshua MEYEROWITZ, 1985: *No Sense of Place*, New York, Oxford University Press.

Casey MILLER and Kate SWIFT, 1981: *The Handbook of Non-Sexist Writing*, London, The Women's Press.

Trevor MILLUM, 1975: *Images of Woman*, London, Chatto and Windus.

Martin MONTGOMERY, 1986: *An Introduction to Language and Society*, London, Methuen.

Nick MOORE, 1983: *How to do Research*, London, The Library Association.

Stephen MORIN, 1977: "Heterosexual bias in psychological research on lesbianism and male homosexuality", in *American Psychologist*, Vol 32, 1977.

Stephen MORIN and Ellen M. GARFINKLE, 1981: "Male Homophobia" in James W. Chesebro (ed), *Gayspeak*, New York, The Pilgrim Press.

A.R. MORPHET, 1983: "Seminar on Research Methods: Action Research" in M.B. Steinberg (ed), *Research Methods for Higher Degrees*, University of Cape Town.

John P. MURRAY, 1984: "A Soft Response to HARD ATTACKS on Research", in *Media Information Australia*, No 33, August 1984.

James B. NELSON, 1982: "Religious and Moral Issues in Working with Homosexual Clients" in *Homosexuality and Psychotherapy*, The Haworth Press.

John NISBET, 1983: "Curriculum Innovation: An International Perspective", in A.P. Hunter, M.J. Ashley and C.J. Millar (eds), *Education Curriculum and Development*, University of Cape Town.

Grant NOBLE, 1983a: "Children, Television and Morality" in *Media Information Australia*, No 30, November 1983.

Grant NOBLE, 1983b: "Social Learning from Everyday Television", in Michael J.A. Howe (ed) *Learning from Television*, London, Academic Press Inc.

Priscilla NORTON, 1985: "An Agenda for Technology and Education", in *Educational Technology*, January 1985.

Roger OMOND, 1985: *The Apartheid Handbook*, Middlesex, Penguin.

THE OPEN UNIVERSITY, 1981: *The Politics of Cultural Production*, Milton Keynes, The Open University Press.

Howard POLSKIN, 1989: "Who's top of the morning? Who's got egg on their faces?", *TV Guide*, August 19, 1989.

Neil POSTMAN, 1986: *Amusing Ourselves to Death*, London, Heinemann.

Ivor POWELL, 1989: "A finely tuned hullabaloo", *Weekly Mail*, September 1-7, 1989.

Sheryl RAINE, 1987: *Sunday Star*, March 22, 1987.

Sheryl RAINE, 1987: "Nat snacks with carnation syrup", *Sunday Star*, May 3, 1987.

Sheryl RAINE, 1988: *Sunday Star*, TIMEOUT, June 5, 1988.

Sheryl RAINE, 1989: *Sunday Star*, August 6, 1989: 7.

Mamphela RAMPHELE and Emile BOONZAIER, 1988: "The position of African Women: Race and gender in South Africa", in Emile Boonzaier and John Sharp (eds), *South African Keywords*, Cape Town, David Philip.

John REYNOLDS, and Malcolm SKILBECK, 1976: *Culture and the Classroom*, London, Open Books.

Fredric RISSOVER and David C. BIRCH (eds), 1977: *Mass Media and the Popular Arts*, New York, McGraw Hill.

Kevin ROCHFORD, 1983: "Educational Theory and Research Design", in M.B. Steinberg (ed), *Research Methods for Higher Degrees*, University of Cape Town.

Carl R. ROGERS, 1969: *Freedom to Learn*, Columbus, Charles E. Merril Publishing Company.

Carl R. ROGERS, 1978: *Carl Rogers on Personal Power*, London, Constable.

A.J. ROSIE, 1979: "Teachers and Children: Interpersonal Relations in the classroom", in Peter Stringer and Don

Bannister (eds), *Constructs of Sociality and Individuality*, London, Academic Press.

Phil SALMON, 1979: "Children as Social Beings: A Kellyan View", in Peter Stringer and Don Bannister (eds), *Constructs of Sociality and Individuality*, London, Academic Press.

Forrest SAWYER, 1988: "Realities of Television News Programming", in Stuart Oskamp (ed), *Television as a Social Issue*, Newbury Park, Sage Publications.

Errol SELKIRK, 1986: *Computers for Beginners*, London, Unwin.

Patrick SHANNON and David E. FERNIE, 1985: "Print and Television: Children's Use of the Medium is the Message", in *The Elementary School Journal*, Vol 85, No 5, 1985.

John SHARP, 1988a: "Introduction: Constructing Social Reality", in Emile Boonzaier and John Sharp (eds), *South African Keywords*, Cape Town, David Philip.

John SHARP, 1988b: "Two Worlds in One Country: 'First World' and 'Third World' in South Africa", in Emile Boonzaier and John Sharp (eds), *South African Keywords*, Cape Town, David Philip.

Clive SIMKINS, 1988: in Nicky Brasler, "Would you buy a sofa from this woman?", *Fair Lady*, September 28, 1988: 126.

Roger SILVERSTONE, 1983: "The right to speak; on a poetic for television documentary", in *Media, Culture and Society*, Vol 5, No 2, April 1983.

Jerome L. SINGER and Dorothy G. SINGER, 1988: "Some Hazards of Growing up in a Television Environment", in Stuart Oskamp (ed), *Television as a Social Issue*, Newbury Park, Sage Publications.

Peter SINGER, 1983: *Animal Liberation*, Northamptonshire, Thorsons.

Douglas SLOAN, 1983: "Preface: Toward an Education for a Living World", in Douglas Sloan (ed), *Education for Peace and Disarmament: Toward a Living World*, New York, Teachers College Press.

Susan SONTAG, 1989: *AIDS and its Metaphors*, London, The Penguin Press.

Dale SPENDER, 1982: *Invisible Women*, London, Writers and Readers.

Dale SPENDER, 1983: "Theorising about theorising", in Gloria Bowels and Renate Duelli Klein (eds), *Theories of Women's Studies*, London, Routledge and Kegan Paul.

Dale SPENDER, 1985: *For the Record*, London, The Women's Press.

Lynne SPENDER, 1983: *Intruders on the Rights of Men*, London, Pandora Press.

Charlene SPRETNAK and Fritjof CAPRA, 1985: *Green Politics*, London, Paladin.

Karen STABINER, 1987: "The New Strong Women in TV", *Cosmopolitan*, April 1987.

Liz STANLEY and Sue WISE, 1983: "'Back to the personal' or: our attempts to construct 'feminist research'", in Gloria Bowles and Renata Duelli Klein (eds), *Theories of Women's Studies*, London, Routledge and Kegan Paul.

Bruce STARKE, 1990: in Bronwyn Adams, "Women have a down, down on the brew crew", *Weekend Argus*, Weekender, April 14, 1990: 5.

Gloria STEINEM, 1988: "Six Great Ideas that Television is Missing", in Stuart Oskamp (ed) *Television as a Social Issue*, Newbury Park, Sage Publications.

Andrew STEPHEN, 1990: *Sunday Star*, Review, May 20, 1990.

Peter STRINGER and Don BANNISTER (eds), 1979: *Constructs of Sociality and Individuality*, London, Academic Press.

Sunday Star, February 11, 1990.

Sunday Star, February 18, 1990.

Sunday Tribune, January 8, 1989.

Peter TATCHELL, 1987: *AIDS: A Guide to Survival*, London, GMP.

Laurie TAYLOR and Bob MULLAN, 1986: *Uninvited Guests*, London, Chatto and Windus.

Marianne THAMM, 1987: "SABC places South Africa's interests first", *Cape Times*, June 25, 1987.

Marianne THAMM, 1987: "TV waxes lyrical on apartheid", *Cape Times*, August 26, 1987.

Leonard THOMPSON, 1985: *The Political Mythology of Apartheid*, New Haven, Yale University Press.

Robert THORNTON and Mamphela RAMPHELE, 1988: "The quest for community", in Emile Boonzaier and John Sharp (eds), *South African Keywords*, Cape Town, David Philip.

Top 40, March 1990.

Gaye TUCHMAN, 1981: *Making News*, New York, The Free Press.

Sherry TURKLE, 1984: *The Second Self*, London, Granada.

Harvey TYSON (ed), 1987: *Conflict and the Press*, Johannesburg, Argus.

Tian VAN DER MERWE, 1989: *Weekend Argus*, May 27, 1989.

H.I.J. VAN DER SPUY and D.A.F. SHAMLEY (eds), 1978: *The Psychology of Apartheid*, Washington, D.C., University Press of America.

J.C.W. VAN ROOYEN, 1987: *Censorship in South Africa*, Cape Town, Juta and Co. Ltd.

Garth VERDAL, 1987: "Slick, glossy and dangerous - SABC's tribute to the military", *The Argus*, Tonight, December 8, 1987.

Garth VERDAL, 1988: "As if SABC's news isn't already slanted enough", *The Argus*, Tonight, April 12, 1988.

Weekend Argus, Saturday/Sunday, August 12/13, 1989.

Weekend Argus, "The NP's grip on the SABC", April 9, 1988.

Weekly Mail, March 9-15, 1990.

Martin WEST, 1988: "Confusing categories: Population groups, national states and citizenship", in Emile Boonzaier and John Sharp (eds), *South African Keywords*, Cape Town, David Philip.

Tom WICKER, 1985: "Truth and the Press", *Harpers*, January 1985.

Ivor WILKINS and Hans STRYDOM, 1978: *The Super Afrikaners*, Johannesburg, Jonathan Ball.

Guy WILLOUGHBY, 1987: "Biased box boosts the Nats", *Cape Times*, May 15, 1987.

Janice WINSHIP, 1981: "Handling Sex", in *Media, Culture and Society*, Vol 3, No 1, January 1981.

Douglas YOUNG, 1987: "A Priority in Language Education: Language across the Curriculum in Black Education", in Douglas Young and Robert Burns (eds) *Education at the Crossroads*, Rondebosch, University of Cape Town.

Marilee ZDENEK, 1985: *The Right Brain Experience*, London, Corgi.